# Algorithmic Number Theory 

Lecture notes for<br>Winter 2017/18<br>TU-Kaiserslautern

by<br>C. Fieker<br>Version of January 9, 2018

## Contents

Chapter 1. Number Fields ..... 3

1. Basics ..... 3
2. Modules - Basics ..... 7
3. Integrality - Part 1 ..... 9
4. Free $\mathbb{Z}$-Modules ..... 12
5. Integrality - Part 2 ..... 16
Chapter 2. Computation of the Maximal Order ..... 19
6. Theory: Round-2 ..... 19
7. Number Fields, Constructively ..... 24
8. Algorithms for $\mathbb{Z}$-modules ..... 27
9. Algorithms Round2 ..... 33
Chapter 3. Lattices ..... 36
10. Introduction ..... 36
11. Minkowski Theory ..... 38
12. LLL ..... 42
13. Orders ..... 44
Chapter 4. Units ..... 46
14. Dirichlet ..... 46
15. Lower Regulator Bound ..... 49
16. $p$-maximal Unit Groups ..... 51
Chapter 5. Dedekind Domains and the Class Group ..... 53
17. Dedekind Domains ..... 53
18. Primes in Extensions ..... 57
Chapter 6. Computing the Class Group ..... 67
19. The Beginning ..... 67
20. More on Ideals ..... 70
21. Missing Prime Ideals ..... 74
22. $S$-Units ..... 76
23. $\zeta$-Function ..... 78
24. Class Group ..... 81
25. The Number Field Sieve ..... 87

## CHAPTER 1

## Number Fields

## 1. Basics

In this lecture, a number field $L$ is a finite extension of $\mathbb{Q}$. Using the primitive element theorem in Galois theory, we have $L=\mathbb{Q}[\alpha] \simeq \mathbb{Q}[t] / f$ for $f$ a suitable itteducible polynomial - e.g. the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$. In what follows, we mostly assume $f$ to be monic and integral, ie. $f \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ with leading coefficient 1 .

Note: we do not assume $L \subseteq \mathbb{C}$.
Let $K$ be a field (mostly $K=\mathbb{Q}$ or a number field or at least a field of characteristic 0 , but (much) later $\left.K=\mathbb{F}_{p}(t)\right)$ and let $L / K$ be finite, $n:=[L: K]$, i.e. $L$ is a $K$-vectorspace with basis $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$. For all $\beta \in L$ we have a map

$$
\varphi_{\beta}: L \rightarrow L: x \mapsto \beta x
$$

which is $K$-linear, hence we have $M_{\beta} \in K^{n \times n}$ such that

$$
\beta\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)=\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right) M_{\beta}
$$

(careful: the left hand side is using products in $L$ while the right hand side is using operations in $K$ only. The $\alpha_{i}$ are just basis elements)
$M_{\beta}$ is called representation matrix (or (right) regular representation) of $\beta . f_{\beta}:=$ $\operatorname{det}\left(x I_{n}-M_{\beta}\right) \in K[x]$ is called characteristic polynomial of $\beta$. Note that $f_{\beta}$ does not depend on the chosen basis, while $M_{\beta}$ obviously does. We have

$$
f_{\beta}:=x^{n}+b_{n-1} x^{n-1}+\ldots+b_{0}
$$

and $\operatorname{Tr} \beta:=\operatorname{Tr}_{L / K} \beta:=\operatorname{Tr}_{K}^{L} \beta:=-b_{n-1}=\operatorname{Tr} M_{\beta}, N \beta:=N_{L / K} \beta:=N_{K}^{L} \beta:=$ $(-1)^{n} b_{0}=\operatorname{det} M_{\beta}$.
Lemma 1.1: The map $L \rightarrow K^{n \times n}: x \mapsto M_{x}$ is a $K$-algebra homomorphism, i. e. $M_{x}+M_{y}=M_{x+y}$ and $M_{x} M_{y}=M_{x y}$.
We have $\operatorname{Tr}(x+y)=\operatorname{Tr}(x)+\operatorname{Tr}(y)$ and $N(x y)=N(x) N(y)$ as well as $\operatorname{Tr}(\mu x)=$ $\mu \operatorname{Tr}(x), \operatorname{Tr}(\mu)=n \mu$ and $N(\mu x)=\mu^{n} N(x)$ for $\mu \in K$. Thus $\operatorname{Tr}$ is $K$-linear.
Lemma 1.2: Let $L / K$ be a finite extension, $\alpha \in L$ and $f_{\alpha}$ be the characteristic polynomial. Then $f_{\alpha}=m_{\alpha}^{r}$ for some irreducible polynomial $m_{\alpha}$, the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$.

Proof. Let the minimal polynomial $m_{\alpha}=\sum a_{i} t^{i}$ for some $a_{i} \in K$. Since a minimal polynomial is irreducible, $K[t] / m_{\alpha} \cong K[\alpha]$ is a subfield of $L$ of degree $[K[\alpha]: K]=$ $\operatorname{deg} m_{\alpha}$, hence $[L: K[\alpha]]=n / \operatorname{deg} m_{\alpha}=: r$ for $n:=[L: K]$. Fix a $K[\alpha]$-basis $\beta_{1}$, $\ldots, \beta_{r}$ for $L$. Then $\left(\alpha^{i} \beta_{j}\right)_{i, j}$ is a $K$-basis for $L$. Let $M_{\alpha}$ be the representation matrix for $\alpha \in K[\alpha]$, ie

$$
\alpha\left(1, \ldots, \alpha^{n-1}\right)=M_{\alpha}\left(1, \ldots, \alpha^{n-1}\right)
$$

now, obviously

$$
\alpha\left(\beta_{j}, \ldots, \beta_{j} \alpha^{n-1}\right)=M_{\alpha}\left(\beta_{j}, \ldots, \beta_{j} \alpha^{n-1}\right)
$$

for all $j$, hence

$$
\alpha\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{1} \alpha^{n-1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{r} \alpha^{n-1}\right)=\operatorname{diag}\left(M_{\alpha}, \ldots, M_{\alpha}\right)\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r} \alpha^{n-1}\right)
$$

and the characteristic polynomial of the diagonal block matrix is as claimed.
Definition 1.3: Let $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n} \in L$ be arbitrary. Then $\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right):=$ $\operatorname{det}\left(\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha_{i} \alpha_{j}\right)\right)_{i, j}\right)$ is called the discriminant of $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$.

Theorem 1.4: Let $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$ be a $K$-basis for $L$. Then $\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)=0$ iff $\operatorname{Tr}(a)=0$ for all $a \in L$.

Proof. Assume first that $\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)=0$. This implies that the columns of the matrix $\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha_{i} \alpha_{j}\right)\right)_{i, j}$ are $K$-linear dependent thus we can find $c_{i} \in K$, not all zero, such that

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{n} c_{j} \operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha_{i} \alpha_{j}\right)=0
$$

holds for all $i$. Set $\gamma:=\sum c_{j} \alpha_{j} \in L \backslash\{0\}$. Let now $x \in L$ be abitrary. Then there is some $y \in L, y=\sum y_{i} \alpha_{i}$, such that $x=y \gamma$ holds. Now

$$
\operatorname{Tr}(x)=\operatorname{Tr}(y \gamma)=\sum_{i} \operatorname{Tr}\left(y_{i} \alpha_{i} \gamma\right)=\sum_{i} y_{i} \sum_{j} c_{j} \operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha_{i} \alpha_{j}\right)=0
$$

The reverse is trivial.
Remark 1.5: If $L / K$ is separable then Tr is non-trivial. Since we are mainly interested in characteristic 0 , we will always assume this.

Lemma 1.6: Let $\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots \alpha_{n}\right)=\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{n}\right) M$ for some $M \in K^{n \times n}$ and $\alpha_{i}, \beta_{j} \in L$. Then

$$
\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)=(\operatorname{det} M)^{2} \operatorname{disc}\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{n}\right)
$$

## Proof.

By the primitive element theorem in Galois theory, we have $L=K[\alpha]$ for some suitable $\alpha$. Hence $L \cong K[t] / f$ for $f \in K[t]$ the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$. In some suitable field $\Lambda$ (eg. the algebraic closure of $L$ )

$$
f(t)=\prod\left(t-\alpha^{(i)}\right)
$$

This defines field embeddings

$$
(.)^{(i)}: L \rightarrow \Lambda: \sum a_{j} \alpha^{j} \mapsto \sum a_{i}\left(\alpha^{(i)}\right)^{j}
$$

We $\beta \in L$, we call $\beta^{(i)}$ the conjugates of $\beta$. In general we will have $\beta^{(i)} \notin L$ however. (Frequently, in the literature, $\alpha=\alpha^{(1)}$ )
Lemma 1.7 (Vandermonde): Let $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n} \in K$ be arbitrary. Let $M=\left(m_{i, j}\right)_{i, j} \in$ $K^{n \times n}$ be defined by $m_{i, j}:=a_{i}^{j-1}$. Then $\operatorname{det} M=\prod_{i<j}\left(a_{j}-a_{i}\right)$

Proof. Induction by $n$. Tedious, but easy.
Theorem 1.8: Let $\beta \in L$ be arbitrary. Then
(1) For the characteristic polynomial we have $f_{\beta}=\Pi\left(t-\beta^{(i)}\right)$
(2) $N_{L / K}(\beta)=\Pi \beta^{(i)}$
(3) $\operatorname{Tr}(\beta)=\sum \beta^{(i)}$

Note, that this gives an algorithm to compute those quantities - if the conjugates are available.

Proof. We fix a basis $1, \alpha, \ldots, \alpha^{n-1}$ for $L=K(\alpha)$ and compute the representation matrix $M_{\beta}$ for this basis, thus

$$
\beta\left(1, \ldots, \alpha^{n-1}\right)=M_{\beta}\left(1, \ldots, \alpha^{n-1}\right)
$$

Applying the conjugate map, we get

$$
\beta^{(i)}\left(1, \ldots,\left(\alpha^{(i)}\right)^{n-1}\right) M_{\beta}\left(1, \ldots,\left(\alpha^{(i)}\right)^{n-1}\right)
$$

since $M_{\beta} \in K^{n \times n}$ it is invariant under conjugation. Now this clearly states that $\left(1, \ldots,\left(\alpha^{(i)}\right)^{n-1}\right)$ is an Eigenvector to the Eigenvalue $\beta^{(i)}$. Those Eigenvectors form the columns of a Vandermonde matrix, hence are linear independent. (The determinant of the Vandermonde matrix is non-zero since the conjugates of a primitive element are pairwise distinct as the definining polynomial is separable) If we transform $M_{\beta}$ to this new basis, it becomes $\operatorname{diag}\left(\beta^{(1)}, \ldots, \beta^{(n)}\right)$ and the statements follow.

Lemma 1.9: Let $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n} \in L$ be arbitrary, then we have

$$
\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\left(\alpha_{i}^{(j)}\right)_{i, j}\right)^{2}
$$

Proof. Let $A:=\left(\alpha_{i}^{(j)}\right)_{i, j}$. Then $A^{t} A=\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha_{i} \alpha_{j}\right)\right)_{i, j}$.
Let $f \in K[t]$ be a monic polynomial, $f(t)=\Pi\left(t-x_{i}\right)$ in some suitable splitting field. Then

$$
\operatorname{disc}(f):=\prod_{i<j}\left(x_{i}-x_{j}\right)^{2}
$$

is the discriminant of $f$. It is non-zero iff all roots are distinct.
Lemma 1.10: Let $f \in K[t]$ be irreducible and monic, $L:=K[t] / f$ and $\rho \in L$ be a root of $f$. Then

$$
\operatorname{disc}\left(1, \rho, \ldots, \rho^{n-1}\right)=\operatorname{disc} f=(-1)^{\binom{n}{2}} N_{L / K}\left(f^{\prime}(\rho)\right)
$$

Proof. Using Vandermonde 1.7 again and 1.9:

$$
\operatorname{disc}(f)=\prod_{i<j}\left(x_{i}-x_{j}\right)^{2}=\operatorname{det}\left(\left(x_{i}^{j-1}\right)_{i, j}\right)^{2}=\operatorname{disc}\left(1, \rho, \ldots, \rho^{n-1}\right)
$$

Now, using $f(t)=\Pi\left(t-\rho^{(i)}\right)$ and hence $f^{\prime}(t)=\sum_{l} \prod_{j \neq l}\left(t-\rho^{(j)}\right)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
N\left(f^{\prime}(\rho)\right) & =\prod f^{\prime}(\rho)^{(i)}=\prod f^{\prime}\left(\rho^{(i)}\right) \\
& =\prod_{i} \sum_{l} \prod_{j \neq l}\left(\rho^{(i)}-\rho^{(j)}\right) \\
& =\prod_{i} \prod_{j \neq i}\left(\rho^{(i)}-\rho^{(j)}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

All that remains is to "sort" the factors to have $i<j$ - and that accounts for the additional term.

Remark 1.11: There exists some $\alpha \in L$ such that $\operatorname{Tr}_{L / K}(\alpha) \neq 0$ since $\operatorname{disc}(f) \neq 0$.
Lemma 1.12: $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n} \in L$ are $K$-linear indepdendent iff $\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right) \neq 0$.
Proof. In 1.4 we showed that if the $\alpha_{i}$ form a basis and if the trace is non-trivial, then $\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right) \neq 0$ as well, so by 1.11, the first implication is complete.

Let now $\sum b_{i} \alpha_{i}=0$ for some $c_{i} \in K$, i. e. the $\alpha_{i}$ be dependent. Then $\sum b_{i} \alpha_{i}^{(j)}=0$ for all $j$, hence $\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\alpha_{i}^{(j)}\right)=0$ and we're done.
Lemma 1.13: Let $L / E / K$ be a finite tower of fields (i. e. $[L: E]=: m$ and $[E: K]=: n$ are finite) and $\alpha \in L$. Then $\operatorname{Tr}_{L / K}(\alpha)=\operatorname{Tr}_{E / K}\left(\operatorname{Tr}_{L / E}(\alpha)\right)$ and $N_{L / K}(\alpha)=N_{E / K}\left(N_{L / E}(\alpha)\right)$

Proof. Let $L=K[\beta]$ and $E=K[\alpha]$. Then, in some suitable extension

$$
f_{K, \beta}=m_{K, \beta}=\prod\left(t-\beta^{(i)}\right)
$$

To avoid confusion and to distinguish conjugates of $E$ and $L$, we define maps $\varphi_{L, i}$ : $L \rightarrow \Lambda: \beta \mapsto \beta^{(i)}$ Similarly, we define maps $\varphi_{E, i}: E \rightarrow \Lambda$. Now, obviously the restriction $\left.\varphi_{L, i}\right|_{E}$ is $\varphi_{E, j}$ for some $j$. Let $A_{j}:=\left\{i\left|\varphi_{L, i}\right|_{E}=\varphi_{E, j}\right\}$. This defines a partitioning of $\{1, \ldots, m n\}$. Now, for the characteristic polynomial $f_{\alpha}$ of $\alpha \in L$ we have by 1.2 and degree considerations $f_{\alpha}=m_{\alpha}^{m}$. Since $f_{\alpha}(t)=\Pi\left(t-\varphi_{L, i}(\alpha)\right)=$ $\Pi\left(t-\varphi_{E, i}(\alpha)\right)^{m}$ we see that all sets $A_{j}$ have size $m$.

Let $g(t):=f_{E, \beta} \in E[t]$, then $g \mid f_{K, \beta} \in E[t]$ since $\beta$ is a root of both and $g$ is the minimal polynomial. Now $\varphi_{L, i}(g(\beta))=\left(\varphi_{L, i}(g)\right)\left(\varphi_{L, i}(\beta)\right.$, and since $g \in E[t]$, we have $\varphi_{L, i}(g)=\varphi_{E, j}(g)$ for all $i \in A_{j}$, hence we have

$$
\varphi_{E, j}(g)(t)=\prod_{i \in A_{j}}\left(t-\varphi_{L, i}(\beta)\right)
$$

and finally, since we have the partitioning,

$$
f_{K, \beta}=\prod \varphi_{E, i}(g)
$$

Now the statements for the norm and trace follow from here.

## 2. Modules - Basics

Note, especially in the beginning, a ring here is not assumed to be commutative or unitary. However, the most important example and the key application for the semester is for $R$ to be $\mathbb{Z}$ or rings derived from here (localisations, quotients, completions).

Also, due to the non-commutativity of the ring, we are going to mention left or right modules and ideals.
Definition 1.14: Let $R$ be a ring. A (left) $R$-module $M$ is an Abelian group together with a operation: $\circ: R \times M \rightarrow M$ such that $(r s) \circ m=r \circ(s \circ m)$, $(r+s) \circ m=r \circ m+s \circ m$ and $r \circ(m+n)=r \circ m+r \circ n$.
$M$ is called unitary if $R$ contains a $1 \neq 0$ and if $1 \circ m=m$ holds for all $m \in M$.
A subset $U$ of some $R$-module $M$ is called submodule if
(1) $U$ is a subgroup of $M$,
(2) $R U \subseteq U$.

Let $M$ and $N$ be two $R$-modules. A group homomorphism $\varphi \in \operatorname{Hom}(M, N)$ such that $\varphi(r m)=r \varphi(m)$ holds for all $r \in R$ and $m \in M$ is called an $(R$-)module homomorphism. We write $\varphi \in \operatorname{Hom}_{R}(M, N)$ in this case.
(To summarise: A module is a "vectorspace over a ring".)
For any module $M$ the intersection of any number of submodules is again a submodule, therefore for any subset $A \subseteq M$ there exists a minimal submodule of $M$ containing $A$.
Definition 1.15: Let $M$ be an $R$-module. For $A \subseteq M$ let $\langle A\rangle=\langle A\rangle_{R}$ be the minimal submodule of $M$ containing $A$.
$M$ is called finitely generated if there there is some $A \subseteq M$ such that $\# A<\infty$ and $M=\langle A\rangle$.

For unitary $M$ we have

$$
\langle A\rangle=\left\{\sum_{\text {fin. }} r_{a} a \mid a \in A, r_{a} \in R\right\} .
$$

In general

$$
\langle A\rangle=\cap_{A \leq U \leq M} U .
$$

Definition 1.16: For a family $\left(M_{i}\right)_{i \in I}$ of submodules of $M$, we define

$$
\sum_{i \in I} M_{i}:=\underset{i \in I}{+} M_{i}:=\left\langle\cup_{i \in I} M_{i}\right\rangle
$$

the inner sum of $M_{i}$. If we have $M_{i} \cap\left\langle\cup_{i \neq j} M_{j}\right\rangle=\left\langle M_{j} \mid i \neq j\right\rangle=\{0\}$, then the (inner) direct sum is defined as

$$
\dot{+}_{i \in I} M_{i}:=\left\langle M_{i} \mid i \in I\right\rangle .
$$

Theorem 1.17: Let $R$ be commutative and unitary, $M$ be a finitely generated unitary $R$-module, $\mathfrak{a} \unlhd R$ be an ideal $\varphi \in \operatorname{End}_{R}(M)$ with $\varphi(M) \subseteq \mathfrak{a} M$. Then there exists $a_{i} \in \mathfrak{a}$ such that

$$
\varphi^{n}+\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} a_{i} \varphi^{i}=0
$$

Proof. Fix any $x_{i}$ such that $\left\langle x_{i} \mid 1 \leq i \leq n\right\rangle=M$. From $\varphi\left(x_{i}\right) \in \mathfrak{a} M$, we see that there are $a_{i, j} \in \mathfrak{a}$ such that $\varphi\left(x_{i}\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i, j} x_{j}$. (Note: The $a_{i, j}$ are not unique!) $f:=\operatorname{det}\left(x\right.$ id $\left.-\left(a_{i, j}\right)_{i, j}\right)=x^{n}+\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} a_{i} x^{i} \in x^{n}+\mathfrak{a}[x]$ now satisfies $f(\varphi)=0$. For $A:=\left(\varphi \delta_{i, j}-a_{i, j}\right)_{i, j} \in R[\varphi]^{n \times n}$ we have

$$
A\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)^{t}=\left(\varphi\left(x_{i}\right)-\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i, j} x_{j}\right)_{i}=0 .
$$

Let now $B$ be the adjoint matrix, $B:=\left(b_{i, j}\right)_{i, j}$ and $b_{i, j}:=(-1)^{i+j} \operatorname{det}\left(\left(a_{l, m}\right)_{i \neq l, j \neq m}\right)$. Then $B A=\operatorname{det}(A)$ id, and thus

$$
B A\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)^{t}=0=\operatorname{det}(A)\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)^{t}
$$

hence $f(\varphi)=\operatorname{det}(A)=0 \in \operatorname{End}_{R}(M)$.

## 3. Integrality - Part 1

In this section, let $\Lambda$ be some integral domain, $1_{\Lambda} \neq 0$ and $R \subseteq S \subseteq \Lambda$ unitary subrings. Typically, $\Lambda=L$ will be a number field, $R=\mathbb{Z}$ and $S$ some ring inside $L$. Definition 1.18: $a \in \Lambda$ is called integral over $R$ if there is some monic $f \in R[t]$ such that $f(a)=0$. A ring $S$ is called integral over $R$ if all $a \in S$ are integral.

Theorem 1.19 (Kronecker): Elements $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r} \in \Lambda$ are integral over $R$ iff $R\left[\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right]$ is a finitely generated $R$-module, ie $R\left[\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right]=\sum R \omega_{i}$. Here, the sum is not necessarily direct.

Note that $\mathbb{Z}[t]$ is not finitely generated as a $\mathbb{Z}$-module! (It is however finitely generated as a $\mathbb{Z}$-algebra)

Proof. Assume first, that all the $\alpha_{i}$ are integral. We now proceed via induction. Since $\alpha_{1}$ is integral, there is some monic $f_{1} \in R[t]$ such that $f_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}\right)=$ 0 . Since $f_{1}$ is monic we get $\alpha_{1}^{n}=-\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} f_{1, i} \alpha_{1}^{i}$ for $n:=\operatorname{deg} f_{1}$. Now clearly $R\left[\alpha_{1}\right]=\left\langle\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{1}^{n-1}\right\rangle$ is finitely generated. For the induction, assume that $S:=$ $R\left[\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right]=\left\langle 1, \omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{s}\right\rangle_{R}$ is finitely generated. Now, as above, we find a monic polynomial $f_{r+1} \in R[t]$ such that $f_{r+1}\left(\alpha_{r+1}\right)=0$, hence, $\alpha_{r+1}^{m}=\sum_{i=0}^{m-1} f_{r+1, i} \alpha_{r+1}^{i}$ and $S\left[\alpha_{r+1}\right]=\left\langle 1, \alpha_{r+1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r+1}\right\rangle_{S}$ is finitely generated as an $S$-module. By induction now

$$
S\left[\alpha_{r+1}\right]=\sum_{i} S \alpha_{r+1}^{i}=\sum_{i}\left(\sum_{j} R \omega_{j}\right) \alpha_{r+1}^{i}=\sum R \omega_{j} \alpha_{r+1}^{i}
$$

hence we have finite generation again.
If $S:=R\left[\alpha_{1}, \ldots \alpha_{r}\right]$ is finitely generated, then we can for any $u \in S$ use 1.17 and the map $S \rightarrow S: s \mapsto s u$ to find a monic polynomial having $u$ as a zero.

Corollary 1.20: (1) For $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}$ integral over $R$, we have $R\left[\alpha_{1}, \ldots \alpha_{r}\right]$ is integral and, specifically
(2) For integral $\alpha$ and $\beta$, both $\alpha \beta$ and $\alpha+\beta$ are integral.

Theorem 1.21: $\Lambda$ integral over $S$ and $S$ integral over $R$, then $\Lambda$ is integral over $R$ as well.

Proof. Let $x \in \Lambda$ be arbitrary. Then there is some $S[t] \ni f=\sum f_{i} t^{i}$ such that $f(x)=0$, hence $x$ is integral over $R\left[f_{0}, \ldots, f_{n}\right]$, and $f_{i} \in S$ are integral over $R$, thus by $1.19, R\left[f_{0}, \ldots, f_{n}, x\right]$ is finitely generated and thus $x$ is integral over $R$.

Definition 1.22: Define $\operatorname{IntCls}(R, \Lambda):=\{x \in \Lambda \mid x$ is integral over $R\}$ this is called the integral closure of $R$ in $\Lambda . \quad R$ is called integrally closed in $\Lambda$ iff $\operatorname{IntCls}(R, \Lambda)=R$.

Remark 1.23: $\operatorname{IntCls}(R, \Lambda)$ is a ring.
Lemma 1.24: $\operatorname{IntCls}(R, \Lambda)$ is integrally closed in $\Lambda$, i. e.

$$
\operatorname{IntCls}(R, \Lambda)=\operatorname{IntCls}(\operatorname{IntCls}(R, \Lambda), \Lambda)
$$

Proof. By 1.21.

Theorem 1.25: Let $K=Q(R)$, the quotient field of the factorial ring (UFD) $R$ (think $R=\mathbb{Z}, K=\mathbb{Q}$ ). Then $R$ is integrally closed in $K$, i. e. $R=\operatorname{IntCls}(R, K)$.

Proof. Let $\alpha \in K$ be integral over $R$. Then $\alpha=a / b$ for some $a, b \in R$, wlog $a$ and $b$ are coprime i.e. $\langle a, n\rangle=R$, and we have some $f \in R[t]$ monic, such that $f(\alpha)=0$. So

$$
\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^{n}+\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} f_{i}\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^{i}=0
$$

and

$$
a^{n}+\sum f_{i} b^{n-i} a^{i}=0
$$

after clearing of denominators, thus $b \mid a^{n}$. $R$ is a UFD, hence $\pi \mid a$ for all primes $\pi \mid b$, so $a / b \in R$ as required.

From now on, we assume $R$ to be integrally closed in $Q(R)=K$.
Remark 1.26: $K \cap \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)=R$
Lemma 1.27: Let $\beta \in L$ be arbitrary, then $\beta=s / u$ for some $u \in R$ and $s \in$ $\operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$

Proof. Let $m>0$ be minimal such that $1, \beta, \ldots, \beta^{m}$ are $K$-linearly dependent (i. e. $m$ is the degree of the minimal polynomial of $\beta$ ). Since $K=Q(R)$, we see that $\left\{\beta^{i} \mid 0 \leq i \leq m\right\}$ is also $R$-linearly dependent (by clearing denominators), hence

$$
\sum a_{i} \beta^{i}=0
$$

for suitable $a_{i} \in R$. By the above $a_{m} \neq 0$ since $m$ was minimal. Now it is easy to see that $a_{m} \beta \in \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$ as claimed: Multiplying by $a_{m}^{m-1}$ we get

$$
\sum_{i=0}^{m} a_{i} a_{m}^{m-i-1}\left(a_{m} \beta\right)^{i}=0
$$

hence $a_{m} \beta$ is a root of the monic polynomial

$$
x^{m}+\sum_{i=0}^{m-1} a_{i} a_{m}^{m-i-1}
$$

Remark 1.28 (Symmetric Polynomials): Let $f \in K[t]$ be arbitrary monic. Then, in some suitable splitting field

$$
f(t)=\prod\left(t-\lambda_{i}\right)
$$

Expanding the product we get

$$
f(t)=\prod\left(t-\lambda_{i}\right)=t^{n}+\sum(-1)^{n-i} \sigma_{n-i}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) t^{i}
$$

for some $\sigma_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[t_{1}, \ldots, t_{n}\right]$. In fact

$$
\sigma_{i}=\sum_{1 \leq i_{1}<\ldots<i_{i} \leq n} \prod_{j} t_{i_{j}}
$$

The $\sigma_{i}$ are called elementary symmetric polynomials. Since $f \in K[t]$, we see that $\sigma_{i}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) \in K!$

Lemma 1.29: $\beta \in L$ is integral over $R$ iff $m_{\beta} \in R[t]$ is monic where $m_{\beta}$ denotes the minimal polynomial of $\beta$ over $K$.

Proof. If $m_{\beta}$ is monic, clearly $\beta$ is integral. Hence assume now $\beta$ is integral. Then, by definition, we have some monic polynomial $f \in R[t]$ such that $f(\beta)=0$, hence $m_{\beta} \mid f$ in $K[t]$. All that remains is to show $m_{\beta} \in R[t]$ (rather than $K[t]$ ). Let $M$ be a splitting field for $M$. Then clearly, all roots of $m_{\beta}$ are integral over $R$ (as the roots of the same monic polynomial, namely $f$ ). By the theorem on symmetric polynomials, all the coefficients of $m_{\beta}$ are polynomials in the roots, hence integral. Now since $R$ is integrally closed, $m_{\beta} \in K[t] \cap \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)[t]=R[t]$.

The same proof also shows that for any finite extension, the characteristic polynomial of an integral element is integral. We also see, that here $R$ does not need to be PID - it is sufficient to be integrally closed for the proof to work. For $\mathbb{Z}$, this is essentially the classical Gauss-Lemma.
Corollary 1.30: Let $\alpha \in \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$, then $N_{L / K}(\alpha), \operatorname{Tr}_{L / K}(\alpha) \in R$
Corollary 1.31: Let $\alpha_{i} \in \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$ then $\operatorname{disc}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right) \in R$
Lemma 1.32: Let $\alpha \in \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$ then $\alpha \mid N(\alpha)$ in $R[\alpha]$.
Proof. Let $f \in R[t]$ be the characteristic polynomial of $\alpha$ over $L$. Then, $f(t)=$ $\sum_{i=0}^{n} f_{i} t^{i}$ with $f_{n}=1$ and $f_{0}= \pm N(\alpha)$, hence $0=f(\alpha)=\alpha\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_{i} \alpha^{i-1}\right) \pm N(\alpha)$
Corollary 1.33: $\varepsilon \in \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$ is a unit in $R[\varepsilon]$ iff $N(\varepsilon) \in R^{\times}$
Note: Since $R \subseteq \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$, we know that $\operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$ is a $R$-module. Next we need to investigate this structure better.

## Lemma 1.34:

(1) There exists a $K$-basis for $L$ contained in $\operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$.
(2) Let $\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{n} \in \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$ be any $K$-basis for $L$ and $d:=\operatorname{disc}\left(\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{n}\right)$. Then $d \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L) \subseteq \sum R \omega_{i}$

Proof. By 1.27, for any $\alpha \in L$ we have some $d_{\alpha} \in R$ such that $d_{\alpha} \alpha \in \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$, hence (1) follows by taking a common denominator.
Let now $\left(\omega_{i}\right)_{i}$ be any integral $K$-basis for $L$ and $\alpha \in \operatorname{IntCls}(R, L)$ be arbitrary. Then $\alpha=\sum \alpha_{i} \omega_{i}$ for some $\alpha_{i} \in Q(R)=K$. Multiplying by $\omega_{j}$ we get $\omega_{j} \alpha=\sum \alpha_{i} \omega_{j} \omega_{i}$ and $\operatorname{Tr}\left(\omega_{j} \alpha\right)=\sum \alpha_{i} \operatorname{Tr}\left(\omega_{i} \omega_{j}\right)$. This shows

$$
\left(\left(\omega_{i} \omega_{j}\right)_{i, j}\left(\alpha_{i}\right)_{i}^{t}=\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha \omega_{j}\right)\right)_{j}^{j}\right.
$$

Cramer's rule now gives $d \alpha_{i} \in R$ since $\operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha \omega_{j}\right) \in R$.
What we would like to do now, is to show that the integral closure is a free $R$-module - however, that means we have to do modules first.

## 4. Free $\mathbb{Z}$-Modules

Let $\left(M_{i}\right)_{i \in I}$ be a family of $R$-modules (not submodules!), then we define in the usual way the (outer) direct product as

$$
\prod_{i \in I} M_{i}:=\left\{\left(m_{i}\right)_{i \in I} \mid m_{i} \in M_{i}\right\}
$$

and the direct sum as

$$
\oplus_{i \in I} M_{i}:=\left\{x \in \prod_{i \in I} M_{i} \mid \text { only finitely many } m_{i} \neq 0\right\}
$$

Both are $R$-modules with the componentwise operation. They satisfy the universal property:
THEOREM 1.35: Let $\left(M_{i}\right)_{i \in I}$ be a family of $R$-modules.
(1) For every $R$-module $M$ and every family $\varphi_{i} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M, M_{i}\right)$ of homomorphisms, there is exactly one $\varphi: M \rightarrow \prod_{i \in I} M_{i}$ such that the following diagram commutes for all $i \in I$ :


The $\pi_{i}: \prod_{i \in I} M_{i} \rightarrow M_{i}:\left(m_{i}\right)_{i} \mapsto m_{i}$ are the canonical projections.
(2) For every $R$-module $M$ and every family $\varphi_{i} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{i}, M\right)$ of maps there is exactly one $\varphi: \oplus_{i \in I} M_{i} \rightarrow M$ such that the following diagram commutes for all $i \in I$ :


The $\iota: M_{i} \rightarrow \oplus_{i \in I} M_{i}: m_{i} \mapsto\left(m_{j}\right)_{j}$ such that $m_{j}=0$ for $i \neq j$ are the canonical injections.
Note: For finite index sets, the direct product is the same as the direct sum.
Lemma 1.36: Let $U \leq M$ be a submodule of the $R$-module $M$. Using $\alpha \circ(x+U):=$ $\alpha x+U$ the quotient group $M / U$ gets the structure of an $R$-module, the so called quotient module.
Lemma 1.37: Let $M, \tilde{M}$ be two $R$-modules and $\varphi: M \rightarrow \tilde{M}$ an $R$-module homomorphism. Then
(1) $\operatorname{im}(\varphi) \cong M / \operatorname{ker}(\varphi)$,
(2) $(U+V) / U \cong V /(U \cap V)$ for submodules $U, V$ of $M$,
(3) $M / V \cong(M / U) /(V / U)$ for $U \leq V \leq M$.

Proof. As usual.
Definition 1.38: For $A \subseteq M$ is $\operatorname{Ann}(A):=\alpha(A):=\{r \in R \mid \forall m \in A: r m=0\}$ the annihilator of $A$. If $\operatorname{Ann}(M)=\{0\}$ then $M$ is called faithful. $m \in M$ is called torsion element or short torsion if $\operatorname{Ann}(m) \neq 0$. $\operatorname{Tor}(M):=\{m \in M \mid \operatorname{Ann}(m) \neq$ $0\} . M$ is called torsion module or short torsion if $\operatorname{Tor}(M)=M$ holds, $M$ is called torsion free if $\operatorname{Tor}(M)=0$ holds.

Remark 1.39:
(1) In general, $\operatorname{Tor}(M)$ is no submodule of $M$.
(2) $\operatorname{Ann}(A)$ is a (left) ideal of $R$.
(3) if $M \neq 0$ and $\operatorname{Tor}(M)=\{0\}$ then $R$ is a domain (i. e. has no zero-divisors).

Lemma 1.40: Let $R$ be a domain and $M$ an $R$-module. Then $\operatorname{Tor}(M)$ is a submodule and $M / \operatorname{Tor}(M)$ is torsion free.
Definition 1.41: A finite subset $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ of an $R$-module $M$ is called $R$-free (free or $R$-linear independent) if $\sum_{i=1}^{r} \alpha_{i} x_{i}=0$ with $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r} \in R$ always implies $\alpha_{1}=\ldots=\alpha_{r}=0$. An arbitrary subset $S \subseteq M$ is called free if all finite subsets of $S$ are free.
$S \subseteq M$ is called a basis of $M$ if $S$ is free such that $\langle S\rangle=M$ holds. A module with basis is called a free module.

A free module with basis is almost the same as a vector space. Some common properties are listed in the following theorem.
Theorem 1.42: Let $X \subseteq M, M$ a unitary $R$-module. The following are equivalent:
(1) For every $R$-module $N$ and every map $\varphi: X \rightarrow N$ exists exactly one homomorphism $\Phi: M \rightarrow N$ extending $\varphi$. (Definition of homomorphisms via the basis)
(2) The map $r x \mapsto r$ is an $R$-module isomorphism between $R x$ and $R$ for every $x \in X$. Furthermore $M=\dot{+}_{x \in X} R x$.
(3) $M$ is free with basis $X$.
(4) Every $m \in M$ has a unique representation $m=\sum_{\text {fin. }} r_{x} x$.
(5) $M \cong \oplus_{x \in X} R$, where the isomorphism is given as $\left(r_{x}\right)_{x} \mapsto \sum r_{x} x$.

For finite set $X$, we see that $M$ is free iff $M \cong R^{X}=R^{\# X}$.
Example 1.43:
(1) $\emptyset$ is free.
(2) $M$ free implies $M$ torsion free. The reverse is in general wrong.
(3) Vectorspaces are free unitary modules over fields.
(4) Let $K$ be a field, $V$ a $K$-vectorspace. Then $V$ is an $\operatorname{End}(V)$-module via $\varphi \circ v:=$ $\varphi(v)$.
(5) A normal number field with Galois group $G$ is a $\mathbb{Z}[G]$ module.
(6) In any commutative domain $R$ an ideal $\mathfrak{a} \subseteq R$ is a free $R$-module (it is always an $R$-module) iff $\mathfrak{a}=(a)$, i. e. if $\mathfrak{a}$ is principal. This can be wrong if $R$ has zero-divisors.
(7) Let $R \subseteq S$ be a unitary ring extension. Then $S$ is a unitary $R$-module.

Theorem 1.44: Let $M$ be a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module, then all bases have the same size, called the rank of $M$.

Proof. By Theorem 1.42.5, $M \cong \mathbb{Z}^{X_{1}} \cong \mathbb{Z}^{X_{2}}$. Just looking at the additive group, $\left(\mathbb{Z}^{X_{i}},+\right)$ we see that $\# X_{1}=\# X_{2}$ neccessarily. (As a proof: $\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n} / 2 \mathbb{Z}^{n},+\right)=$ $(\mathbb{Z} / 2 \mathbb{Z},+)^{n}$ so counting show this immediately.)

Example 1.45: In general, the previous theorem is wrong in the non-commutative setting. One can construct a ring $R$ such that $R^{n} \cong R^{m}$ for all $n$ and $m$.

Theorem 1.46: Let $M$ be a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module of rank $n$. Then every submodule $U \leq M$ is free of rank $m \leq n$.

Proof. Via induction. $n=0$ is trivial.
Let $n \geq 1, x_{i}$ a basis for $M$, so $M=\dot{+}_{i=1}^{n} \mathbb{Z} x_{i}$,

$$
\tilde{M}:=\dot{+}_{i=1}^{n-1} \mathbb{Z} x_{i} \subseteq M
$$

and $\varphi_{n}: M \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}: \sum a_{i} x_{i} \mapsto a_{n} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(M, \mathbb{Z})$.
By induction hypothesis we have $\tilde{U}:=U \cap \tilde{M}$ is free of rank $\leq n-1$. If $U=\tilde{U}$, then we're done. Otherwise set

$$
\mathfrak{a}:=\varphi_{n}(U)
$$

$\mathfrak{a}$ is an submodule of $\mathbb{Z}$, it is an ideal $\neq\{0\}$ in $\mathbb{Z}$, so $\mathfrak{a}=\left\langle a_{n}\right\rangle$, fix now any $y \in \varphi_{n}^{-1}\left(a_{n}\right)$.
Aim: $U=\tilde{U}+\mathbb{Z} y$. Let $x \in \tilde{U} \cap \mathbb{Z} y$ be arbitrary, then $x$ has a unique representation $x=\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \tilde{\alpha}_{i} x_{i}$. On the other hand, $x=\alpha \circ y$ for some $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}$, thus $x=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha \alpha_{i} x_{i}$ hence $\alpha \alpha_{n}=0$ and $\alpha=0$, since $\alpha_{n} \neq 0$ and $\mathbb{Z}$ domain, we see $x=0$. Therefore $\tilde{U} \cap \mathbb{Z} y=\{0\}$.

Let $u \in U$ be arbitrary, $u=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \beta_{i} x_{i}$. We can find $\tilde{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $\beta_{n}=\tilde{\beta} \alpha_{n}$. Now

$$
u-\tilde{\beta} y=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\beta_{i}-\tilde{\beta} \alpha_{i}\right) x_{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{n-1}\left(\beta_{i}-\tilde{\beta} \alpha_{i}\right) x_{i} \in \tilde{M}
$$

and $u-\tilde{\beta} y \in \tilde{U}$ since $u, y \in U$ implying $u \in \tilde{U}+\mathbb{Z} y$ and $U \subseteq \tilde{U}+\mathbb{Z} y$. Obviously $\tilde{U}+\mathbb{Z} y \subseteq U$.
Example 1.47: Let $R=\mathbb{Z} / 4 \mathbb{Z}$, then $\langle(1,2)\rangle \subseteq R^{2}$ is free (of rank 1 and basis $\{(1,2\})$, while $\langle(2,2)\rangle$ is not free $(2(2,2)=(0,0))$ So this gives an example of a non-free submodule of a free module.

Theorem 1.48: Finitely generated torsion free $\mathbb{Z}$-modules are free.
Proof. We have (from the finitely generation)

$$
M=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathbb{Z} x_{i}
$$

Among the subsets of $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ choose a free one with maximally many elements. Wlog $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{s}\right\}$ is such a maximal subset. If $n=s$, we are done, thus assume $s<n$. For every $j \in\{s+1, \ldots, n\}$ exist $\alpha_{j}, \alpha_{j i} \in \mathbb{Z}(1 \leq i \leq s), \alpha_{j} \neq 0$ such that

$$
\alpha_{j} x_{j}=\sum_{i=1}^{s} \alpha_{j, i} x_{i}
$$

thus $\alpha_{j} x_{j} \in F$ for $F=\sum_{i=1}^{s} \mathbb{Z} x_{i}$.
Set $\alpha=\prod_{i=s+1}^{n} \alpha_{i}$, then $\alpha \neq 0$ and $\alpha x \in F$ for all $x \in M$ or, $\alpha M \subseteq F \subseteq M$. By Theorem 1.46 is $\alpha M$ free of rank $\leq s$ and $\varphi: M \rightarrow \alpha \cdot M: x \mapsto \alpha \cdot x$ is an homomorphism which is trivally surjective and injective due to the torsion freeness of $M$. Finally $M \simeq \alpha M$ is then free of rank $s$.

Remark 1.49: $\mathbb{Q}$ is torsion free as a $\mathbb{Z}$-module, but not free.

Theorem 1.50: Let $M$ be a finitely generated $\mathbb{Z}$-module. Then we have $M=$ $\operatorname{Tor}(M) \oplus F$ where $F$ is free and $F \simeq M / \operatorname{Tor}(M)$.

Proof. By 1.40 and $1.48, M / \operatorname{Tor}(M)$ is free with basis $B$. Now we look at the canonical projection:

$$
\varphi: M \rightarrow M / \operatorname{Tor}(M): x \mapsto x+\operatorname{Tor}(M) .
$$

For every $b \in B$ fix some $m_{b} \in \varphi^{-1}(b)$. Set $F:=\sum_{b \in B} \mathbb{Z} m_{b}$, so $F$ is a free submodule of $M$ with basis $\left\{m_{b} \mid b \in B\right\}$. We need to show $M=\operatorname{Tor}(M) \oplus F$. We have $F=\tau(M / \operatorname{Tor}(M))$ with the isomorphism

$$
\tau: M / \operatorname{Tor}(M) \rightarrow F: \sum_{b \in B} \alpha_{b} b+\operatorname{Tor}(M) \mapsto \sum_{b \in B} \alpha_{b} m_{b} .
$$

For $m \in M$ we have $m=\tau(\varphi(m))+(m-\tau(\varphi(m))) \in F+\operatorname{Tor}(M)$. Let now $x \in F \cap \operatorname{Tor}(M)$ fixed, than we have $x=\tau(\tilde{m})$ for some $\tilde{m} \in M / \operatorname{Tor}(M / R)$ hence

$$
0=\varphi(x)=\varphi(\tau(\tilde{m}))=\tilde{m} \Rightarrow x=\tau(\tilde{m})=0
$$

showing $F \cap \operatorname{Tor}(M)=\{0\}$.

## 5. Integrality - Part 2

Lemma 1.51: Every finitely generated $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$-module $L \supseteq U \neq\{0\}$ is a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module of rank $n=[L: K]$.

Proof. Let $\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{n} \in \operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ be a $\mathbb{Q}$-basis for $L, d:=\operatorname{disc}\left(\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{n}\right)$ and $\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{r}$ be the set of $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ generators for $U$. Then, since $U$ is also an $\mathbb{Z}$-module, we can find some $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $a \mu_{i} \in \operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ hence $a U \subseteq \operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$. By 1.34 we see $d a U \subseteq d \operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L) \subseteq \sum \mathbb{Z} \omega_{i}=: M$. This immediately implies that $d a U$ and hence $U$ are free $\mathbb{Z}$-modules of rank at most $n$ since $M$ is. On the other hand, assume wlog $\mu_{1} \neq 0$ then $\left(\mu_{1} \omega_{i}\right)_{i}$ are clearly independent and contained in $U$, so $U$ has rank $n$ as required.

Note: since $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ as an $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ module is generated by $\{1\}$ we conclude that $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ is indeed a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module of rank $n$. Similarly, any ideal $A \subseteq$ $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ is also free of rank $n$ as a $\mathbb{Z}$-submodule.
Definition 1.52: Any $\mathbb{Z}$-basis for $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ is called an integral basis for $L$ (and for $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ ).
Definition 1.53: Let $K=\mathbb{Q}, L=\mathbb{Q}(\Lambda)$ and assume $[L: K]<\infty$. Then

$$
\mathcal{C}_{\Lambda / \mathbb{Z}}:=\left\{x \in L \mid \operatorname{Tr}_{L / K}(x \Lambda) \subseteq \mathbb{Z}\right\}
$$

is called the co-different of $\Lambda / \mathbb{Z}$.
Lemma 1.54: Let

$$
\mathcal{C}_{\operatorname{IntCls}(R, L) / \mathbb{Z}}=\mathcal{C}=\{x \in L \mid \operatorname{Tr}(x \operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)) \subseteq \mathbb{Z}\}
$$

the co-different of $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ over $\mathbb{Z}$. Then $\mathcal{C}$ is a $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$-module containing $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$.

Theorem 1.55: Assume $\left(\omega_{i}\right)_{i}$ is an integral basis for $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$, ie $\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)=$ $\dot{+} \mathbb{Z} \omega_{i}$ and that $\omega_{i}^{*}$ is the trace-dual basis $\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\omega_{i} \omega_{j}^{*}\right)=\delta_{i, j}\right)$. Then $\mathcal{C}=\dot{+} \mathbb{Z} \omega_{j}^{*}$.

Proof. Let $a \in \mathcal{C}$ arbitrary, then $a=\sum a_{i} \omega_{i}^{*}$ with some $a_{i} \in \mathbb{Q}$. But then $a_{i}=$ $\sum a_{j} \operatorname{Tr}\left(\omega_{i} \omega_{j}^{*}\right)=\operatorname{Tr} \omega_{i} \sum a_{j} \omega_{j}^{*}=\operatorname{Tr}\left(\omega_{i} a\right) \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Now, let $a=\sum a_{i} \omega_{i}^{*}$ with $a_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $b \in \operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ be arbitrary, so $b=\sum b_{i} \omega_{i}$, $b_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$. But now

$$
\operatorname{Tr}(a b)=\operatorname{Tr}\left(\sum a_{j} \omega_{j}^{*} b_{i} \omega_{i}\right)=\sum a_{j} b_{i} \operatorname{Tr}\left(\omega_{i} \omega_{j}^{*}\right)=\sum a_{i} b_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}
$$

hence $a \in \mathcal{C}$.
Lemma 1.56: Let $f(t):=\prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(t-x_{i}\right) \in K[t]$ be squarefree and $f(0) \neq 0$.
(1) Lagrange Interpolation

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{x_{i}^{k} f(t)}{f^{\prime}\left(x_{i}\right)\left(t-x_{i}\right)}= \begin{cases}t^{k} & \text { for } 0 \leq k<n-1 \\ t^{n}-f(t) & \text { for } k=n-1\end{cases}
$$

(2) Euler

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{x_{i}^{k-1}}{f^{\prime}\left(x_{i}\right)}= \begin{cases}0 & \text { for } 0 \leq k \leq n-2 \\ 1 & \text { for } k=n-1\end{cases}
$$

Proof. Taylor expansion shows

$$
f(t)=f(x+(t-x))=f(x)+\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{(t-x)^{i}}{i!} f^{(i)}(x)
$$

Thus $f(t) /\left(t-x_{i}\right)=f\left(x_{i}\right) /\left(t-x_{i}\right)+f^{\prime}\left(x_{i}\right)+\left(t-x_{i}\right)(\ldots)=f^{\prime}\left(x_{i}\right)+\left(t-x_{i}\right)(\ldots)$ and in particular

$$
\left(\frac{x_{i}^{k+1} f(t)}{f^{\prime}\left(x_{i}\right)\left(t-x_{i}\right)}\right)\left(x_{i}\right)=x_{i}^{k+1}
$$

Now, the rhs and the lhs are both polynomials in $t$ of degree $<n$, hence they are uniquely defined by the $n$ evaluations at the $x_{i}$.

The second statement follows from the 1st by taking $t=0$ and dividing by $f(0)$.
Theorem 1.57: Let $S=\mathbb{Z}[\alpha]$ and $\mathcal{C}_{S / \mathbb{Z}}:=\{x \in L \mid \operatorname{Tr}(x S) \subseteq \mathbb{Z}\}$ the codifferent of $S$. Then

$$
\mathcal{C}_{S / \mathbb{Z}}=\frac{1}{f^{\prime}(\alpha)} S
$$

Proof. Let $g(t):=f(t) /(t-\alpha)$. By Taylor, as above, $g(t)=\sum_{i=1}^{\infty}(t-\alpha)^{i} \frac{f^{(i)}(\alpha)}{i!}$ Since $\left(t^{j}\right)^{(i)} / i!=\binom{j}{i} t^{j-i} \in \mathbb{Z}[t], g(t) \in S[t]$. Now

$$
\frac{\alpha^{j} g(t)}{f^{\prime}(\alpha)}=\frac{\alpha^{j} f(t)}{f^{\prime}(\alpha)(t-\alpha)}
$$

so by 1.56 ,

$$
\operatorname{Tr}\left(\frac{\alpha^{j} g(t)}{f^{\prime}(\alpha)}\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
t^{j} \\
t^{n}-f(t)
\end{array}\right.
$$

On the other hand,

$$
\frac{\alpha^{j} g(t)}{f^{\prime}(\alpha)}=\frac{\alpha^{j} \sum g_{i} t^{i}}{f^{\prime}(\alpha)}=\sum t^{i} \frac{\alpha^{j} g_{i}}{f^{\prime} \alpha}
$$

Taking traces and coefficient comparison shows that $g_{i} / f^{\prime}(\alpha)$ is the dual basis to $\alpha^{i}$, hence the statement follows.

Definition 1.58: Any $\alpha \in \operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, \bar{Q})$ is called algebraic integer. For any finite extension $L / \mathbb{Q}$, we define $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathcal{O}_{L}=\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ the maximal order of $L$ or ring of integers.
An order $S$ of a number field $L$ is any unitary subring $S \subseteq L$ that is finitely generated as an $\mathbb{Z}$-module and $Q(S)=L$.
Let $S=\sum \mathbb{Z} \omega_{i}$ be any order with $\mathbb{Z}$-basis $\omega_{i}$. Then $\operatorname{disc}(S):=\operatorname{disc}\left(\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{n}\right)$. We define $\operatorname{disc} L:=d_{L}:=\operatorname{disc} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ and note that, in general, discriminants might only be defined up to squares of units. In $\mathbb{Z}$, the units are $\pm 1$ thus the square is 1.

Remark 1.59: Let $f \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ be monic and irreducible. Set $L:=\mathbb{Q}[\alpha]:=\mathbb{Q}[t] / f$. Then
(1) $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, hence $\mathbb{Z}[\alpha]$ is an order, the so called equation order of $f$.
(2) $\mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap \mathbb{Q}=Z$
(3) For all $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}, f_{\beta}, m_{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$
(4) $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ is a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module of rank $n$, hence an order.
(5) Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $\operatorname{disc}(\alpha)$ is square-free (up to units). Then $\mathbb{Z}[\alpha]=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Note: in general such an $\alpha$ does not exist.

Lemma 1.60: Let $N \subseteq M$ be free $\mathbb{Z}$-modules of the same rank $n$. Then ( $M$ : $N)<\infty$.

Proof. Let $n_{i}$ be a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis for $N$ and $m_{i}$ for $M$. Then we can find $a_{i, j} \in \mathbb{Z}$ s.th. $n_{i}=\sum a_{i, j} m_{j}$ as $N \subseteq M$. For $B=\left(b_{i, j}\right)$ the adjoint matrix (cofactor matrix) we have $B\left(a_{i, j}\right)=I_{n} \operatorname{det}\left(a_{i, j}\right)$ so that for $d:=\operatorname{det}\left(a_{i, j}\right)$ we get $d m_{j}=\sum b_{i, j} n_{i}$, so $d M \subseteq N \subseteq M$ and $M: N \leq M: d M=d^{n}<\infty$.
Lemma 1.61: Let $\mathcal{O}$ be an order in $L$. Then
(1) $\mathbb{Z} \subseteq \mathcal{O}$
(2) Let $\{0\} \neq \mathfrak{a} \leq \mathcal{O}$ be an ideal. Then $\mathfrak{a}$ is a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module of rank $n$.
(3) $\mathcal{O}$ is noetherian
(4) $\mathcal{O} / \mathfrak{a}$ is a finite ring.
(5) Every non-zero prime ideal in $\mathcal{O}$ is maximal.

Proof. (1) is clear.
(2): Let $a \in \mathfrak{a}$ be arbitrary and $\mathcal{O}=\dot{+} R \omega_{i}$. Then $a \omega_{i} \in \mathfrak{a}$ are independent since $\omega_{i}$ are independent. Thus $\mathfrak{a}$ is free as a submodule of a free module of rank $n$ and contains a free subset of size $n$.
(3) clear using (2)
(4) by (2) and Lemma 1.60
(5) The quotient ring modulo a prime ideal is an integral domain. By (4) it is finite provided the ideal is non-trivial, thus by a fundamental result in algebra, a field, which forces the ideal to be maximal.

## CHAPTER 2

## Computation of the Maximal Order

## 1. Theory: Round-2

Given $L:=\mathbb{Q}[t] / f$ for some monic $f \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$, we saw that $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\operatorname{IntCls}(\mathbb{Z}, L)$ is a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module of rank $n=\operatorname{deg} f=[L: \mathbb{Q}]$. The task now is to find an algorithm to compute an integral basis. Once this is done, we can compute with elements in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ using the $\mathbb{Z}$-module structure.

We start with trivial observations about the index:
Remark 2.1: (1) Let $M_{1} \leq M_{2} \leq M_{3}$ be free of the same rank. Then ( $M_{3}$ : $\left.M_{1}\right)=\left(M_{3}: M_{2}\right)\left(M_{2}: M_{1}\right)$
(2) Let $M \leq N$ be free of the same rank. Then $(N: M) N \subseteq M$.

Definition 2.2: Let $\mathcal{O}$ be an order in $L, 0 \neq m \in \mathbb{Z}$. Define

$$
\mathcal{O}_{m}:=\left\{x \in \mathbb{Z}_{L} \mid \exists k: m^{k} x \in \mathcal{O}\right\}
$$

the m-maximal overorder of $\mathcal{O}$. Typically, $m$ will be a prime.
Lemma 2.3: For any order $\mathcal{O}$ in $L$ and any $0 \neq m \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have that
(1) $\mathcal{O}_{m}$ is an order, hence a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module of rank $n$
(2) $\left(\mathcal{O}_{m}: \mathcal{O}\right) \mid m^{k}$ and $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathcal{O}_{m}\right), m\right)=1$
(3) for $m=p$ a prime, (2) simplifies to $\left(\mathcal{O}_{p}: \mathcal{O}\right)=p^{k}$ and $p \not \backslash\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathcal{O}_{p}\right)$.

Proof. Since, as sets, $\mathcal{O} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{m} \subseteq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, all we have to show is that $\mathcal{O}_{m}$ is a ring. Let $x, y \in \mathcal{O}_{m}$. Then we have $k, l$ such that $x m^{k} \in \mathcal{O}$ and $y m^{l} \in \mathcal{O}$, hence $(x+y) m^{\max (k, l)} \in \mathcal{O}$ and $x y m^{l+k} \in \mathcal{O}$ and $\mathcal{O}_{m}$ is a ring, hence an order, so $\mathcal{O}_{m}=$ $\sum R \omega_{i}$. For every $\omega_{i}$ we have a $k_{i}$ such that $\omega_{i} m^{k_{i}} \in \mathcal{O}$. Setting $k:=\max \left(k_{i} \mid i\right)$, we see that $m^{k} \omega_{i} \in \mathcal{O}$ for all $i$, hence $m^{k} \mathcal{O}_{m} \subseteq \mathcal{O} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{m}$. Thus $\left(\mathcal{O}_{m}: \mathcal{O}\right)\left(\mathcal{O}: m^{k} \mathcal{O}_{m}\right)=$ $\left(\mathcal{O}_{m}: m^{k} \mathcal{O}_{m}\right)=m^{k n}$.

Suppose, $c:=\operatorname{gcd}\left(\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathcal{O}_{m}\right), m\right) \neq 1$. Then we can find some $x \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $c x \in \mathcal{O}_{m}$, hence $c m^{k} x \in \mathcal{O}$, but this implies $m^{k+1} x \in \mathcal{O}$ and thus $x \in \mathcal{O}_{m}$.

Corollary 2.4: Let $\mathbb{Z}_{L} \supseteq S \supseteq \mathcal{O}_{m} \supseteq O$ be orders and $m \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}\right.\right.$ : $S), m)=\operatorname{gcd}\left(\left(S: \mathcal{O}_{m}\right), m\right)=1$
Lemma 2.5: Let $\mathcal{O} \subseteq S_{1}, S_{2} \subset L$ be orders such that $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\left(S_{1}: \mathcal{O}\right),\left(S_{2}: \mathcal{O}\right)\right)=1$. Then $S_{1}+S_{2}$ is an order as well. Here, the sum is taken as $\mathbb{Z}$-modules.

Proof. Let $p=\left(S_{1}: \mathcal{O}\right)$ and $q=\left(S_{2}: \mathcal{O}\right)$. Then $1=e p+f q$. We need to show that $S_{1}+S_{2}$ is a ring. Let $a, b \in S_{1}$ and $u, v \in S_{2}$ be arbitrary, so $a+u$ and $b+v$ are arbitrary elements in $S_{1}+S_{2}$. Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
(a+u)(b+v) & =a b+u v+a v+b u \\
& =a b+u v+a v(e p+f q)+b u(e p+f q) \\
& =\underbrace{a b}_{\in S_{1}}+\underbrace{u v}_{S_{2}}+\underbrace{(a p) v e}_{\in \mathcal{O} S_{2} R}+\underbrace{a f(q v)}_{S_{2} R \mathcal{O}}+\underbrace{(p b) u e}_{\mathcal{O} S_{2} R}+\underbrace{b f(q u)}+S_{1} R \mathcal{O} \\
& \in S_{1}+S_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Note: this lemma is wrong in general if the indices are not coprime.
Lemma 2.6: Let $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$ be coprime (not neccessarily prime), $\mathcal{O} \subset L$ an order. Then $\mathcal{O}_{p}+\mathcal{O}_{q}=\mathcal{O}_{p q}$.

Proof. By $2.5, \mathcal{O}_{p}+\mathcal{O}_{q}$ is an order.
Let now $x \in \mathcal{O}_{p q}$, then we can find $k$ such that $(p q)^{k} x \in \mathcal{O}$, so $q^{k} x \in \mathcal{O}_{p}$ and $p^{k} x \in \mathcal{O}_{q}$. From $1=e p^{k}+f q^{k}$ we see $x=x\left(e p^{k}+f q^{k}\right)=e\left(p^{k} x\right)+f\left(q^{k} x\right) \in \mathcal{O}_{p}+\mathcal{O}_{q}$ as required.

Corollary 2.7: Let $d:=\operatorname{disc}(\mathcal{O})$, then $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\sum_{p^{2} \mid d} \mathcal{O}_{p}$ where the sum runs over all prime divisors of $d$.

Proof. Let $S:=\sum_{p^{2} \mid d} \mathcal{O}_{p}$, then this is an order by 2.5. Clearly, $S \subseteq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ and, since all are orders, they are $\mathbb{Z}$-modules of full rank as well. Let $\omega \in \mathbb{Z}_{L} \backslash S$ be arbitrary then there is some $\mu \in R$ such that $\mu \omega \in S$. Since $\mu$ is not a unit, we can find a prime $p$ such that $p \mid \mu$ thus $p \mid(S[\omega]: S)$, so $p^{2}|\operatorname{disc} S| \operatorname{disc} \mathcal{O}$. But this contradicts $S$ being $p$-maximal by 2.6

So, the aim is to find (a basis for) $\mathcal{O}_{p}$ for a prime $p$.
Lemma 2.8: Let $\Lambda$ be a commutative ring and $S \subseteq \Lambda$ a multiplicative semigroup (i. e. for $u, v \in S$, we have $u v \in S$ as well). Set $\mathcal{M}:=\{\mathfrak{a} \leq \Lambda \mid \mathfrak{a} \cap S \subseteq\{0\}\}$. Then $\mathcal{M}$ has a maximal element $\mathfrak{p}$ which is a prime ideal.

Proof. Since $\mathcal{M}$ is non-empty $(\{0\} \in \mathcal{M})$ and inductively ordered, by Zorn's lemma there is a maximal element $\mathfrak{p}$ in $\mathcal{M}$. Let now $a, b \in \Lambda$ such that $a b \in \mathfrak{p}$. Assuming $a, b \notin \mathfrak{p}$ we get $(a \Lambda+\mathfrak{p}) \cap S \neq \emptyset \neq(b \Lambda+\mathfrak{p}) \cap S$ since $\mathfrak{p}$ was maximal. But now we find $s_{1}, s_{2} \in S, c_{1}, c_{2} \in \Lambda$ and $p_{1}, p_{2} \in \mathfrak{p}$ such that $s_{1}=a c_{1}+p_{1}$ and similar for $b$.

$$
S \ni s_{1} s_{2}=\left(a c_{1}+p_{1}\right)\left(b c_{2}+p_{2}\right)=\underbrace{a b}_{\in \mathfrak{p}} c_{1} c_{2}+p_{1} b c_{2}+p_{2} a c_{1}+p_{1} p_{2} \in \mathfrak{p}
$$

which is absurd. So either $a$ or $b$ has to be in $\mathfrak{p}$, so $\mathfrak{p}$ is prime.
Lemma 2.9: Let $\Lambda$ be commutative and unitary, then $x \in \Lambda$ is nilpotent (i.e. $\exists k: x^{k}=0$ ) iff $x \in \cap_{\mathfrak{p} \leq \Lambda} \mathfrak{p}$ where the intersection runs over all prime ideals.

Proof. Assume $x$ nilpotent. Find the minimal $k$ such that $x^{k}=0$, then clearly $x^{k-1} x=0 \in \mathfrak{p}$ for any prime ideal $\mathfrak{p}$. By induction thus $x \in \mathfrak{p}$.
Assume now $x \in \cap \mathfrak{p}$ and $x^{k} \neq 0$ for all $k$. Set $S:=\left\{x^{k} \mid k>0\right\}$, this is clearly a multiplicative semigroup, thus by 2.8 there is a prime ideal $\mathfrak{p}$ such that $\mathfrak{p} \cap S=\emptyset$, however, since $x \in S$ and $x \in \mathfrak{p}$ this is a contradiction.

Lemma 2.10: Let $\Lambda$ be commutative and unitary and $\mathfrak{a} \leq \Lambda$ an ideal. Then $\sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}:=\left\{x \in \Lambda \mid \exists k: x^{k} \in \mathfrak{a}\right\}$ is an ideal in $\Lambda$ as well, the so called radical of $\mathfrak{a}$.

Proof. Since $\mathfrak{a} \subseteq \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$, the set is non-empty. Let $x, y \in \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$, then we can find $k, l$ such that $x^{k}, y^{l} \in \mathfrak{a}$. Set $r:=k+l$

$$
(x+y)^{r}=\sum\binom{r}{i} x^{i} y^{k+l-i}
$$

and either $i \geq k$ and $x^{i} \in \mathfrak{a}$ or $k+l-i \geq l$ and $y^{k+l-i} \in \mathfrak{a}$ so all terms are in $\mathfrak{a}$, hence $x+y \in \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$. Finally, $r \in \Lambda$, then $(r x)^{k}=r^{k} x^{k} \in \mathfrak{a}$, so $r x \in \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$ as required.

Note (reminder): Let $R$ be a commutative and unitary ring (just to be safe), $\mathfrak{a}$ an ideal in $R$ and $\varphi: R \rightarrow R / \mathfrak{a}$ the canonical projection. For any ideal $\mathfrak{b}<R$ clearly $\varphi(\mathfrak{b})$ is an ideal in $R / \mathfrak{a}$. Furthermore $\varphi(\mathfrak{b})$ is maximal (prime) iff $\mathfrak{b}$ is maximal (prime) and $\mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{b}$. This correspondence is $1-1$.
Lemma 2.11: Let $\Lambda$ be commutative and unitary, $\mathfrak{a} \leq \Lambda$ an ideal and $x \in \Lambda$. Then $x \in \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$ iff $x \in \cap\{\mathfrak{p} \supseteq \mathfrak{a} \mid \mathfrak{p}$ is a prime ideal $\}$.

Proof. Let $\varphi: \Lambda \rightarrow \Lambda / \mathfrak{a}$ be the canonical projection. Then $x \in \sqrt{\mathfrak{a}}$ iff $x^{k} \in \mathfrak{a}$ iff $0=\varphi\left(x^{k}\right)=\varphi(x)^{k}$ iff $\varphi(x)$ is nilpotent in $\Lambda / \mathfrak{a}$. By 2.9 , this holds iff $\varphi(x) \in \mathfrak{p}+\mathfrak{a}$, but the prime ideals in $\Lambda / \mathfrak{a}$ are in one-to-one correspondence to those in $\Lambda$ containing $\mathfrak{a}$.

Note (reminder): Let $R$ be commutative and unitary, $\mathfrak{p}_{i}$ be pairwise co-maximal ideals, then the Chinese remainder theorem shows

$$
R / \cap \mathfrak{p}_{i}=\sum R / \mathfrak{p}_{i}
$$

and $\cap \mathfrak{p}_{i}=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}$. In particular, this version works for rings that are not PID (in contrast to AGS).
Theorem 2.12: Let $p \in \mathbb{Z}$ be prime and $\mathcal{O} \subseteq L$ an order, then $\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$ is the intersection of all maximal ideals of $\mathcal{O}$ containing $p$. This are at most $n$ ideals and $(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{n} \subseteq p \mathcal{O}$.

Proof. The 1st part is clear: in $\mathcal{O}$ all (non-trivial) prime ideals are maximal so this follows from 2.11. Let $\left(\mathfrak{p}_{i}\right)_{i}$ the maximal ideals containing $p$. Since different maximal ideals are co-maximal as well, $\cap \mathfrak{p}_{i}=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}$ and we can form the chain

$$
\mathcal{O} \supseteq \mathfrak{p}_{1} \supseteq \mathfrak{p}_{1} \mathfrak{p}_{2} \supseteq \prod \mathfrak{p}_{i} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq p \mathcal{O}
$$

The CRT shows $\mathcal{O} / \prod_{i=1}^{j} \mathfrak{p}_{i}=\dot{+} \mathcal{O} / \mathfrak{p}_{i}$, hence all the ideal-inclusions are proper. Since the index $\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n} \cong \mathcal{O}: p \mathcal{O} \cong(p \mathbb{Z})^{n}\right)=p^{n}$ we can use 2.1 to see $r \leq n$ since $\left(\prod_{i=1}^{j} \mathfrak{p}_{i}: \prod_{i=1}^{j+1} \mathfrak{p}_{i}\right) \mid p^{n}=(\mathcal{O}: p \mathcal{O})$. As $p$ was prime, there can be at most $n$ steps of index $p$.

Now define $\mathfrak{a}_{i}:=(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{i}$ then,

$$
\mathcal{O} \supseteq \mathfrak{a}_{1} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \mathfrak{a}_{r} \ldots \supseteq p \mathcal{O}
$$

hence since $(\mathcal{O}: p \mathcal{O})=p^{n},\left(\mathfrak{a}_{i}: \mathfrak{a}_{i+1}\right)=p^{?}$ and there can be at most $n$ nontrivial steps in the chain. If, at any step, we have $\mathfrak{a}_{i}=\mathfrak{a}_{i+1}$, then induction shows immediately $\mathfrak{a}_{i}=\mathfrak{a}_{i+k}$ for all $k$, hence the chain is stationary after $n$ steps at most.

It remains to show $\mathfrak{a}_{n}=p \mathcal{O}$. From $\mathbb{Z} / p$ is finite, we see that $\mathcal{O} / p \mathcal{O}$ is finite as well. Since for any $y \in \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$ we have an $k>0$ such that $y^{k} \in p \mathcal{O}$, and since $\mathcal{O} / p \mathcal{O}$ thus $\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} / p \mathcal{O}$ is finite, we have a single $k>0$ such that $y^{k} \in p \mathcal{O}$ for all $y \in \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$. Now an element $x \in(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{l}$ is of the form

$$
x=\sum_{\mathrm{fin} .} \prod_{i=1}^{l} x_{i}
$$

Now, if $l \gg 0$ is large enough, each such products will have repetitions - at least one $x_{i}$ will occur with multiplicity $\geq k$, and $x_{i}^{n} \in p \mathcal{O}$, hence $x \in p \mathcal{O}$ as required.

For the case of infinite quotients, we will use a different characterisation of the radical. We note that 2.12 actually gives an algorithm to compute the radical (which we will study shortly).
Definition 2.13: Define $T_{p}:=\{x \in \mathcal{O} \mid \operatorname{Tr}(x \mathcal{O}) \subseteq p \mathbb{Z}\}$ the trace-radical.
Theorem 2.14 (Newton-identities): Let $\sigma_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[t_{1}, \ldots, t_{n}\right]$ the elementary symmetric polynomials and $p_{i}:=\sum_{j=1}^{n} t_{j}^{i}$ the power-sums. Then we have the following identities:

$$
k \sigma_{k}=\sum_{i=1}^{k}(-1)^{i-1} \sigma_{k-i} p_{i}
$$

This allows to recursively compute the $\sigma_{i}$ from the $p_{i}$ and vice-versa.
Theorem 2.15: Assuming that $i=1, \ldots, n$ can be inverted in $\mathbb{Z} / p$, we have $T_{p}=\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$

In particular for $p>n$ this will give an alternate algorithm to compute the radical.
Proof. In 2.11 we showed that $\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}=\cap \mathfrak{p}$ where $\mathfrak{p}$ runs over all prime ideals containing $p$. Let $\mathfrak{p}$ any such prime, $\Gamma / K$ the normal closure of $L / K$ and $s_{i} \in$ $\operatorname{Aut}(\Gamma, K)$ such that the $s_{i} \mid L$ are pairwise different (so the $s_{i}$ form a complete set of representatives for $\operatorname{Aut}(\Gamma / K) / \operatorname{Fix}(L)$ or a complete set of embeddings $L \rightarrow \Gamma$ ). Finally, $\mathfrak{q} \leq \mathbb{Z}_{\Gamma}$ should be a prime containing $\mathfrak{p}$. Now, let $x \in \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$ and $y \in \mathcal{O}$ arbitrary, then $x y \in \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} \subseteq \mathfrak{p} \subseteq \mathfrak{q}$. So $\operatorname{Tr}(x y)=\sum s_{i}(x y) \in \sum s_{i} \mathfrak{q}$ Since also $\operatorname{Tr}(x y) \in R\left(x\right.$ and $y$ are integral), $\operatorname{Tr}(x y) \in \sum s_{i} \mathfrak{q} \cap R=p R$, showing $\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} \subseteq T_{p}$.
Let now $x \in T_{p}$, then for all $y \in \mathcal{O}$ we have $\operatorname{Tr}(x y) \in p R$ thus $\operatorname{Tr}\left(x^{k}\right) \in p R$ for all $k>0$. Now, let $m(t)=\Pi\left(t-s_{i}(x)\right)$ be the characteristic polynomial of $x$. Then 1.28 shows that the coefficients of $m$ are just the elementary symmetric polynomials evaluated at the roots $s_{i}(x)$. Now, 2.14 shows that the elementary symmetric polynomials can be expressed through the power-sums, provided we can divide by $i=1, \ldots, n$. Now $t_{k}\left(s_{1}(x), \ldots, s_{n}(x)\right)=\sum\left(s_{i}(x)\right)^{k}=\sum s_{i}\left(x^{k}\right)=\operatorname{Tr}\left(x^{k}\right) \in$ $p R$, hence all coefficients of $m$ barring the leading coefficient, are in $p R$, hence $x^{n}=-\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} m_{i} x^{i} \in p \mathcal{O}$, showing $x \in \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$.

Definition 2.16: Let $\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b} \leq \Lambda$ ideals. Then

$$
[\mathfrak{a} / \mathfrak{b}]:=\{x \in L \mid x \mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}\}=\operatorname{Hom}(\mathfrak{b}, \mathfrak{a})
$$

this is quite similar to the "colon ideal" in commutative algebra:

$$
\mathfrak{a}: \mathfrak{b}:=\{x \in \Lambda \mid x \mathfrak{b} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}\}
$$

In particular,

$$
[\mathfrak{a} / \mathfrak{a}]=\operatorname{End}(\mathfrak{a})
$$

is called the ring of multipliers of $\mathfrak{a}$.
Lemma 2.17: If $\mathfrak{a} \leq \mathcal{O}$ is an ideal, then $[\mathfrak{a} / \mathfrak{a}]$ is an order containg $\mathcal{O}$
Proof. Let $x, y \in[\mathfrak{a} / \mathfrak{a}]$, so $x \mathfrak{a}, y \mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$ hence $(x y) \mathfrak{a} \subseteq x \mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$ and $(x+y) \mathfrak{a} \subseteq$ $x \mathfrak{a}+y \mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}+\mathfrak{a}=\mathfrak{a}$. From $1 \in \mathcal{O}$ and $\mathcal{O} \mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}$, we see $1 \in \mathcal{O} \subseteq[\mathfrak{a} / \mathfrak{a}]$.

To show that we have an order, we need to show finite generation. Clearly, for $N:=(\mathcal{O}: \mathfrak{a})$ we have $N x \in \mathfrak{a}$ for all $x \in \mathcal{O}$, in particular, $N=N 1 \in \mathfrak{a}$. Now

$$
[\mathfrak{a} / \mathfrak{a}]=\{x \in L \mid x \mathfrak{a} \subseteq \mathfrak{a}\} \subseteq\{x \in L \mid N x \in \mathfrak{a}\} \subseteq\{x \in L \mid N x \in \mathcal{O}\}=\frac{1}{N} \mathcal{O}
$$

shows that $[\mathfrak{a} / \mathfrak{a}]$ is free as a submodule of a free module and has full rank, since it contains $\mathcal{O}$.

Lemma 2.18: $([\sqrt{m \mathcal{O}} / \sqrt{m \mathcal{O}}]: \mathcal{O}) \mid m^{k}$ for some $k$.
Proof. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
{[\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}] } & =\{x \in L \mid x \sqrt{m \mathcal{O}} \subseteq \sqrt{m \mathcal{O}}\} \\
& \subseteq\{x \in L \mid x \sqrt{m \mathcal{O}} \subseteq \mathcal{O}\} \\
& \subseteq\{x \in L \mid x m \in \mathcal{O}\}=\frac{1}{m} \mathcal{O}
\end{aligned}
$$

So, $\mathcal{O} \subseteq[\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}] \subseteq 1 / m \mathcal{O}$, hence the statement about the index follows.
Theorem 2.19 (Local-Maximality): We have $\mathcal{O}=\mathcal{O}_{p}$ iff $\mathcal{O}=[\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}]$ for $p$ a prime in $R$.

Proof. By the previous lemma, 2.18, we have

$$
\mathcal{O} \subseteq[\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}] \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{p}
$$

Now, we want to show the following:

$$
\mathcal{O} \subset \mathcal{O}_{p} \text { implies } \mathcal{O} \subset[\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}]
$$

By 2.12, we know that $(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{n} \subseteq p \mathcal{O}$, furthermore, for $k$ large enough $p^{k} \mathcal{O}_{p} \subseteq p \mathcal{O}$ since $\left(\mathcal{O}_{p}: \mathcal{O}\right)=p^{?}$, so

$$
(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{n k} \mathcal{O}_{p} \subseteq(p \mathcal{O})^{k} \mathcal{O}_{p} \subseteq\left(p^{k} \mathcal{O}_{p}\right) \subseteq p \mathcal{O} \subseteq \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}
$$

Now, let $\mu$ be minimal such that $(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{\mu} \mathcal{O}_{p} \subseteq \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$. If $\mu=1$, then, by definition, $\mathcal{O}_{p} \subseteq[\ldots]$ and we're done. So, assume $\mu>1$ and choose $x \in(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{\mu-1} \mathcal{O}_{p} \backslash$ $\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$. Then $x \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} \subseteq \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$, hence $x \in[\ldots]$. Furthermore, $x^{2} \in(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{2 \mu-2} \mathcal{O}_{p} \subseteq$ $(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{\mu} \mathcal{O}_{p} \subseteq \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$. But his now shows that $x \notin \mathcal{O}$, since clearly $(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{\mu} \mathcal{O} \subseteq$ $(\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}})^{\mu} \subseteq \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$ for all $\mu$. Since $x$ was in the ring of multipliers, we are done.

We can summarise the theory into the following algorithm to, in principle, compute the maximal order.

Algorithm 2.20 (Round-2):
Input: some order $\mathcal{O} \subseteq L$
Output: $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$
1: compute $d:=\operatorname{disc} \mathcal{O}$
2: for all $p$ sth. $p^{2} \mid d$ do
3: $\quad S:=\mathcal{O}$
4: $\quad T:=[\sqrt{p S} / \sqrt{p S}]$
5: $\quad$ if $S=T$ then $\mathcal{O}_{p}:=S$, else $S:=T$, and go to 4
6: $\mathbb{Z}_{L}:=\sum \mathcal{O}_{p}$
But now we'll have to look at some of the details of the algorithm.

## 2. Number Fields, Constructively

In order to discuss algorithms, we have to specify and fix representations. Let $L / \mathbb{Q}$ be a number field as a finite extension. By the primitive element theorem, $L=\mathbb{Q}[t] / f$ for some irreducible $f \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$. Let us now fix such an $f$.
Elements in $L$ can now be represented as polynomials $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}[t]$ of degree $\alpha<n=$ $\operatorname{deg} f$. However, for efficiency, we usually choose to represent them as $1 / d \beta$ and $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$. Using this representation, we can study the costs of basic operations: $\pm$ is just addition/ subtraction of polynomials, hence $O(n)$, linear in the degree (though be careful with denominators and coefficient explosion!) Multiplication will require a reduction (division) after the polynomial multiplication. Using "normal" multiplication/ long divsion, this will take $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ operations, using asymptotically fast techniques, this can drop to $O(n \log n)$. Division/ inversion can be done using the extended gcd algorithm, computing $1=\operatorname{gcd}(\alpha, f)=e \alpha+g f$, which requires, classically, $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ operations or $O(n \log n)$ in the fast case. However, in general, the size of $\alpha^{-1}$ is $n$ times the size of $\alpha$. Norms can be computed using resultants, also in time $O\left(n^{2}\right), O(n \log n)$ res. This is all still subject of active research. We employ

- (x)gcd algorithms
- sub-resultants
- modular methods
- $p$-adic lifting approaches
- fft / dft
- power series with pre-computed inverses

It should be noted, that there are other representations as well, better suited for some applications then others. E.g. polynomials of degree $<2 n$ are uniquely defined by their values at $2 n$ points. This allows for multiplication (without reduction) in time $O(n)$, reduction via matrix operations, can be achieved in $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ yielding the same complexity for the total operation as above. However, for the evaluation of scalar products, only one reduction is required.
The (potential) coefficient explosion in particular of the denominators is frequently no problem as the elements will be mostly in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ which means a bounded denominator.

We could also represent elements by their representation matrix, which requires $n^{2}$ coefficients rather than $n$ or $2 n$. However, to compute $\alpha \beta$ given $M_{\beta}$ takes only $n^{2}$ operations, which is faster than the classical $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ of above. The representation matrix for the power-basis $\left.\left(\alpha^{i}\right)_{i}\right)$ can be computed using $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ operations: repeatedly multiplying by $\alpha$ and reducing with the polynomial. Division using representation matrices can be done using linear algebra, but here are the costs $O\left(n^{3}\right)$, dropping to $O\left(n^{\omega}\right)$ for fast matrix multiplication techniques.

Lastly, we can represent elements by their real or complex conjugates. This allows all basic operations to be performed in $O(n)$ - but the numerical problems make this not useful directly. By choosing a "different complex field", and omitting divisions the numerical problems can be avoided, but now one has a representation for elements of bounded "size" only. Aside from the numerical problems, we can convert between those and other representations using matrix-vector multiplication in $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ operations.

Elements or orders will be represented by their coefficients wrt a fixed basis $\left(\omega_{i}\right)_{i}$, so $\sum a_{i} \omega_{i}=\left(a_{i}\right)_{i}$ will be a "generic" element. We can of course extend this to field elements by allowing rational coefficients or a denominator. Mostly, we can also allow arbitrary field bases instead of order bases. To add/subtract elements is straighforward, however, multiplication is more involved:

$$
\left(\sum a_{i} \omega_{i}\right)\left(\sum b_{j} \omega_{j}\right)=\sum a_{i} b_{j} \omega_{i} \omega_{j}=\sum a_{i} b_{j}\left(\sum \Gamma_{i, j, k} \omega_{k}\right),
$$

where the $\Gamma_{k} \in \mathbb{Q}$ (or $\mathbb{Z}$ if we have an order basis) are the structure constants, defining the products of the basis elements. Since multiplication need 3 nested loops, it is easy to see, that the costs are $O\left(n^{3}\right)$ - however, this is not the full truth. The $n^{3}$ multiplications can be grouped into $n^{2}$ coefficient multiplication $a_{i} b_{j}$. Asymptotically, for large coefficients, those are the expensive ones. The structure constants are fixed and the remaining multiplications are multiplcations of large numbers $a_{i} b_{j}$ times small ones $\Gamma_{i, j, k}$. Furthermore, by writing the basis $\omega_{i}$ in terms of any primitive element, we can change the basis into a good basis for multiplication in $n^{2}$ operations, multiply using polynomials, in $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ operations and change back, giving a total of $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ again.

The $\Gamma_{i, j, k}$ can be seen as the representation matrices of the basis elements themselves, hence individual representation matrices can be obtained as linear combinations in time $O\left(n^{3}\right)$. Once the matrices are known, a single product will only take $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ operations. Inversion and division can be handled via linear equation solving, again using $O\left(n^{3}\right)$ operations.

There are more and other representations suggested and even used, eg. the multivariate representation where the number field is represented as a quotient of a multivariate polynomial ring modulo a maximal ideal. For certain applications, this is far superior over the primitive element representation, however, in general this is slower.

Also, this "discussion" was counting algebraic operations only, thus ignoring the coefficient size or precision completely. In practice, the "best" representation depends on the actual problem and its constraints. However, so far, asymptotically the best generic representation is using primitive elements - if a primitive can be found easily.

Theorem 2.21 (Sonn-Zassenhaus): Let $L / K$ be a finite extension with basis $b_{1}$, $\ldots, b_{n}$. Then $L / K$ admits a primitive element iff there are $e_{i} \in\{0,1\}$ such that $\sum e_{i} b_{i}$ is primitive.

Since, in our situation in characteristic 0 , we always have a primitive element, this gives a straight-forward (if possibly slow) algorithm to find a primitive element given a basis.

Ideals can be presented via a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis, using the structure as free $\mathbb{Z}$-modules. We'll come back to this later when we have to use more ideal operations. Here, the basis will be fully sufficient.

## 3. Algorithms for $\mathbb{Z}$-modules

Definition 2.22: Let $R$ be commutative and unitary and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. The invertible matrices $U \in R^{n \times n}$ are called unimodular. GL $(n, R)$ is the set of all unimodular matrices.

In the following algorithms, we will have to work not only over $R=\mathbb{Z}$, but also over $R=\mathbb{Z} / d \mathbb{Z}$ for various $d$. This will be neccessary for efficiency, in particular it automatically avoid coefficient swell, the phenomenon that, even for small results, intermediate steps might require insanely large numbers.

Remark 2.23: Let $R=\mathbb{Z} / d \mathbb{Z}, \varphi: R \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}: x+d \mathbb{Z} \mapsto \operatorname{gcd}(x, d)$ and $\psi: R \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}:$ $x+d \mathbb{Z} \mapsto \min \{|y| \geq 0: x-y \in d \mathbb{Z}\}$ Then
(1) both $\varphi$ and $\psi$ are well defined
(2) both $\varphi$ and $\psi$ allow euclidean division: For all $a, b \in R, b \neq 0$ we can find $q$, $r$ s.th. $a=b q+r$ and $\varphi(r)<\varphi(b)$ (or $\psi(r)<\psi(b)$ ). Thus $R$ is essentially a euclidean ring - but be careful, it has zero-divisors. In particular, we can (and will) use the extended euclidean algorithm! $\psi$ mostly means to work in $\mathbb{Z}$, using lifted numbers, thus using the fact that $\mathbb{Z}$ is already euclidean while $\varphi$ is more subtle.

ExAmple 2.24: Let $R=\mathbb{Z} / 12 \mathbb{Z}, a=6, b=4$ then $a=1 \cdot 4+2$, but also $a=5 \cdot 3-2$. Here, the euclidean division is by no means unique, in particular if we also swap $\varphi$ and $\psi$.

Lemma 2.25:
(1) GL $(n, R)$ is a group.
(2) $A \in R^{n \times n}$ is unimodular iff $\operatorname{det}(A) \in R^{*}$.

Proof. Well known.
Lemma 2.26: Let $M$ be a free $R$-module of rank $n$. For any two bases $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{n}$ and $c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n}$ of $M$ there exists some $U \in \operatorname{GL}(n, R)$ such that

$$
\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{n}\right)=\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n}\right) \cdot U .
$$

Lemma 2.27: Let $R$ be either $\mathbb{Z}$ or $\mathbb{Z} / d \mathbb{Z}$ and $a, b$ in $R$. Then there exists $u, v$, $g, x, y$ in $R$ s.th.

$$
(g, 0)=(a, b)\left(\begin{array}{ll}
u & x \\
v & y
\end{array}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
u & x \\
v & y
\end{array}\right)= \pm 1
$$

Proof. Since $R$ is, in both cases euclidean, the usual extended gcd will do everything for us: $a_{0}:=a, a_{1}:=b$ and $A_{1}:=\left(a_{0}, a_{1}\right)$. Then each step will multiply $A_{i}$ by $T_{i}:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}0 & 1 \\ 1 & -q_{i}\end{array}\right)$ to obtain $A_{i+1}=A_{i} T_{i}=\left(a_{i}, a_{i-1}-q_{i} a_{i}\right)$ where $a_{i-1}=q_{i} a_{i}+r_{i}$ is the euclidean division. This process stops with $(g, 0)$. The accumulated product of the $T_{i}$ has the desired properties.

Example 2.28: Let $R=\mathbb{Z} / 12 \mathbb{Z}$ and $a=6, b=4$. Then $g=2=a-b$. Of course, $a / 2=4 / 2=2$, but as correctly, $4 / 2=8$ since $2 \cdot 8=16=4$. So, divding by $g=2$, we should get $1=a / 2-b / 2$, but $a / 2=8$ and $b / 2=2$ shows $1=4 \ldots$.

This means that we cannot just compute the extended gcd in $\mathbb{Z}$ and obtain the cofactors using division as we would do over $\mathbb{Z}$.
In $\mathbb{Z} / d \mathbb{Z}$, we can actually "tweak" the division to always yield the correct result. In more general Euclidean rings, we cannot, so we have to rely on the extended Euclidean algorithm here.

Lemma 2.29: Let $R$ be as above. Then $a R+b R=g R, a R \cap b R=l R, a b R=g l R$. Furthermore: let $\left(\begin{array}{ll}u & x \\ v & y\end{array}\right)$ be as in 2.27 , then $g=u a+v b, l=a x=-b y, a=g y$, $b=-g x$ and $x R+y R=R$.

Proof. (Kaplansky) Let $U:=\left(\begin{array}{ll}u & x \\ v & y\end{array}\right)$ as in 2.27, then $\operatorname{det} U= \pm 1$, hence $U^{-1}= \pm\left(\begin{array}{cc}y & -x \\ -v & u\end{array}\right)$ giving $(g, 0) U^{-1}=(a, b)=(g y,-g x)$ showing $a, b \in g R$, so $g$ is a "gcd" of $a$ and $b$.
Now let $z \in a R \cap b R$ be arbitrary, so $z=\mu a=-\nu b$. Set

$$
V:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
u & \mu \\
v & \nu
\end{array}\right) \text { and } U^{-1} V=:\left(\begin{array}{cc}
e & f \\
h & i
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Then $\left(\begin{array}{cc}a & b \\ 0 & b\end{array}\right) U=\left(\begin{array}{cc}g & 0 \\ v b & y b\end{array}\right)$. This shows $a x=-b y(1-2$-entry) and $a b=g(y b)$ hence $a b R=g l R\left(2-2\right.$ entry). Now $(a, b) V=(g, 0)$ as well, so $(g, 0) U^{-1} V=$ $(a, b) V=(g, 0)$ hence $g f=0$, implying $a f=0$ as well $(a=g y)$
Cleary $V=U\left(U^{-1} V\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}u & x \\ v & y\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}e & f \\ h & i\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}u & \mu \\ v & \nu\end{array}\right)$, so $\mu=u f+x i$ and $z=\mu a=a(u f+x i)=a x i=l i$, so $z \in l R$, showing $a R \cap b R \subseteq l R$. The reverse inclusion is trivial, hence $l$ is a "lcm" of $a$ and $b$.
The last statement follows from the determinant: $u y-v x= \pm 1$ but $u y-v x \in$ $x R+y R$.

Lemma 2.30: Let $R$ be as above and $\langle a\rangle=\langle b\rangle$ for some elements $a, b \in R$. Then $a$ and $b$ are associate, i. e. there is some $u \in R^{*}$ s.th. $a=u b$.
For $R=\mathbb{Z}$ this is clear: we get $a \in b \mathbb{Z}$, hence $a=b x$ and $b \in a \mathbb{Z}$, implying $b=a y$, so $a=b x=a x y$. The cancellation then gives $x y=1$.
However, in $\mathbb{Z} / 12 \mathbb{Z}$, we have $4 R=8 R=\{0,4,8\}$ and $8=2 \cdot 4,4=2 \cdot 8$ and $x y=4$ is not a unit. On the other hand, we also have $8=5 \cdot 4$ and 5 is a unit.

Proof. For $\mathbb{Z}$ this is clear, so assume $R=\mathbb{Z} / d Z$. Using the CRT, we get $d=\Pi p^{n_{p}}$ and $\mathbb{Z} / d \mathbb{Z} \cong \mathbb{Z} / p^{n_{p}} \mathbb{Z}$. If we can solve the problem for all $\mathbb{Z} / p^{n} \mathbb{Z}$, then the CRT will find a solution in $R$. So, wlog, $R=\mathbb{Z} / p^{n} \mathbb{Z}$. In $R$, all ideals are generated by $p^{k}$ for $k<n$, all elements have a unique representation as $a=p^{k} e$ for $e \in\left(\mathbb{Z} / p^{n} \mathbb{Z}\right)^{*}$. Thus from $a R=b R$ we get $a=b e$ for a suitable $e \in\left(\mathbb{Z} / p^{n} \mathbb{Z}\right)^{*}$ as required.

Lemma 2.31: Let $R$ be as above and $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n} \in R$. There exists some $U \in$ GL $(n, R)$ such that $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \cdot U=(c, 0, \ldots, 0)$ for $c:=\operatorname{gcd}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)$.

Proof. Induction: $n=1$ is trivial. $n=2$ is just 2.27. By induction hypothesis, assume we have $T \in \operatorname{GL}(n, R)$ s.th. $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) T=(g, 0, \ldots, 0)$ for $g$ (a/the) gcd of $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}$. Then clearly, $\tilde{T}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}T & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 1\end{array}\right) \in \operatorname{GL}(n+1, R)$ and $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}, a_{n+1}\right) \tilde{T}=$ $\left(g, 0, \ldots, 0, a_{n}\right)$.
Now, using 2.27 we find $\left(\begin{array}{cc}u & x \\ v & y\end{array}\right) \in \operatorname{GL}(2, R)$ s.th. $\left(g, a_{n+1}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ll}u & x \\ v & y\end{array}\right)=(\tilde{g}, 0)$. Then $S:=\tilde{T}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}u & 0 \ldots 0 & x \\ & \vdots & \\ u & 0 \ldots 0 & v\end{array}\right) \in \operatorname{GL}(n+1, R)$ has all the properties.

For a commutative unitary ring $R$ we have an equivalence relation

$$
a \sim b: \Longleftrightarrow \exists u \in R^{*}: a=u b
$$

Fix now a system of representatives $\mathcal{R} \subseteq R$ for the equivalence classes. For $R=\mathbb{Z}$ we will choose $\mathcal{R}=\mathbb{Z}^{\geq 0}$, for $R=\mathbb{Z} / m \mathbb{Z}$, we choose $\mathcal{R}=\{d|m| d>0\} \cup\{0\}$.

Furthermore, for any $d \in R, d \neq 0$, we need to fix a system of representatives $\mathcal{R}_{d}$ for $R / d R$ as well. Again, for the $\mathbb{Z}$ we can choose the positive (or symmetric) system of representatives.

Example 2.32: Let $R=\mathbb{Z} / 12 \mathbb{Z}$
Theorem 2.33 (Hermite Normal Form): Let $R$ be a PIR. For every matrix $A \in$ $R^{m \times n}$ exisists some $U \in \operatorname{GL}(n, R)$, such that $A \cdot U$ is a lower triangular matrix with "diagonal elements" in $\mathcal{R}$ and the off-diagonal elements are in $\mathcal{R}_{d}$ where $d$ is the diagonal element to the right. $A \cdot U$ is called a Hermite normal form of $A$.

Note: in general, the matrix has a more complicated shape as not all diagonal elements will be non-zero. The "non-zero diagonal" will then be more like a staircase.

Proof. Via induction, $n=1$ begin trivial as we only have to normalise the entry to be in $\mathcal{R}$.

Assume now $n>1$. For $c=\operatorname{gcd}\left(a_{11}, \ldots, a_{1 n}\right) \in \mathcal{R}$ we can find by 2.31 some $U_{1} \in \mathrm{GL}(n, R)$ such that

$$
A \cdot U_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{c|cc}
c & 0 & \ldots \\
\hline * & & \tilde{A}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Using the induction hypothesis on $\tilde{A}$ we get a lower triangular matrix. It remains to use elementary matrices to reduce the off-diagonal elements and to achieve the diagonal elements to be in $\mathcal{R}$.

Remark 2.34: It $R$ is free of zero divisors, then the Hermite normal form is actually unique. To see this, consider a series of projections, starting with a projection onto the 1st coordinate. Then clearly, the top left entry of the HNF will have to be the gcd of the 1st row - a generator for the ideal generated by the 1st row. Hence it is (essentially) unique. Now, for any element in $R^{n}$ there is a unique multiple of the 1st column of the HNF that will zero the 1st entry, thus we can define a projection onto $R^{n-1}$ this way. The same argument now shows the uniqueness of the next diagonal element.

The transformation matrix however is only rarely unique.
Theorem 2.35 (Smith Normal Form): Let $R$ be a PIR and $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in R^{m \times n}$ be arbitrary. Set $r=\min (m, n)$, then we can find $V \in \operatorname{GL}(m, R)$ und $U \in \operatorname{GL}(n, R)$, such that for $S(A):=\left(s_{i, j}\right):=V \cdot A \cdot U$ we have:
(1) $s_{i, j}=0(1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n, i \neq j)$,
(2) $s_{i, i} \mid s_{j, j}(1 \leq i \leq j \leq r)$,
(3) $s_{i, i} \in \mathcal{R}(1 \leq i \leq r)$,
$S(A)$ is unique and is called Smith normal form of $A$.
Proof. The first step is to find $\tilde{V} \in \operatorname{GL}(m, R)$ und $\tilde{U} \in \operatorname{GL}(n, R)$, such that for $\tilde{V} \cdot A \cdot \tilde{U}$ condition (1) holds, i. e. the resulting matrix is diagonal. For $n=1$ this is trivial via 2.31. Let now $n>1$. Application of 2.33 alternatingly from the left (via transpose) and right will achieve

$$
A \cdot \tilde{U}_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
c_{1} & 0 \\
\hline * & A_{1}
\end{array}\right),
$$

and

$$
\tilde{V}_{2} \cdot A \cdot \tilde{U}_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
c_{2} & * \\
\hline 0 & A_{2}
\end{array}\right), \quad \tilde{V}_{2} \cdot A \cdot \tilde{U}_{1} \cdot \tilde{U}_{2}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
c_{3} & 0 \\
\hline * & A_{3}
\end{array}\right),
$$

Since $c_{i+1} \mid c_{i}$ and $c_{1} \mid a_{11}$ this process will terminate, due to $R$ being Noetherian as a PIR, and the chain of ideals $\left\langle c_{i+1}\right\rangle \supseteq\left\langle c_{i}\right\rangle \supseteq\left\langle a_{1,1}\right\rangle$ is ascending.
Once the $\left\langle c_{i}\right\rangle$ are no-longer changing, we can just subtract suitable multiples of the 1 st row or column to obtain

$$
\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
c_{k} & 0 \\
\hline 0 & A_{k}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

The induction hypothesis applied to $A_{k}$ will result in a diagonal matrix, hence (1) is satisfied.

Now we need to achieve the divisibility condition: To get $s_{i i} \mid s_{j j}(1 \leq i<j \leq r)$ we apply row and column operations to replace $s_{i i}$ by $\operatorname{gcd}\left(s_{i i}, s_{j j}\right) \in \mathcal{R}$ and $s_{j j}$ by $\operatorname{lcm}\left(s_{i i}, s_{j j}\right) \in \mathcal{R}$ :
Let $T=\left(\begin{array}{ll}u & x \\ v & y\end{array}\right)$ from 2.27 for $\left(s_{i i}, s_{j j}\right) . G:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}s_{i i} & s_{i j} \\ 0 & s_{j j}\end{array}\right)$ has determinant $s_{i i} s_{j j}$ and $G T=\left(\begin{array}{ll}g & 0 \\ b & c\end{array}\right)$ for some $b=v s_{j j}$ and $c=y s_{j j}$. By 2.29, $g$ is a gcd and $c$ a lcm. Thus $b=v s_{j j} \in\langle g\rangle$, so we can find a $q$ s.th. $v s_{j j}=q g$ and thus $\left(\begin{array}{cc}-q & 1 \\ 0 & 1\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ll}g & 0 \\ b & c\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}g & 0 \\ 0 & c\end{array}\right)$ as required.

For the uniqueness let $d_{i}(A)$ be a gcd of all $(i, i)$-minors of $A(1 \leq i \leq r)$ then $d_{i-1}(A) \mid d_{i}(A)(2 \leq i \leq r)$ by Laplace's formula. Furthermore $d_{i}(A) \mid d_{i}(A \cdot B)$ for $B \in R^{n \times n}$, since the columns of $A \cdot B$ are linear combinations of the columns of $A$, hence every minor of $A \cdot B$ is the product of minor of $A$. Argueing with rows, we get $d_{i}(A) \mid d_{i}(C \cdot A)$ for $C \in R^{m \times m}$ as well. Now we get

$$
d_{i}(A)\left|d_{i}(A \cdot U)\right| d_{i}(V \cdot A \cdot U)=d_{i}(S(A)) \mid d_{i}\left(V^{-1} \cdot S(A) \cdot U^{-1}\right)=d_{i}(A)
$$

thus

$$
d_{i}(A)=d_{i}(S(A))=\prod_{j=1}^{i} s_{j j} \quad(1 \leq i \leq r)
$$

Since $s_{i i}=\frac{d_{i}(A)}{d_{i-1}(A)}\left(1 \leq i \leq r, d_{0}(A):=1\right)$ the proof is finished observing that the identities hold for the ideals, but by 2.30 the generators are all associated, so they can be chosen uniquely in $\mathcal{R}$.

The diagonal elements of the Smith normal form are also known as elementary divisors
Lemma 2.36: Let $N \subseteq M$ be free modules over a PID and $\operatorname{rg}(N)=: n \leq \operatorname{rg}(M)=$ : m. (wlog: $N \subseteq R^{n}, M \subseteq R^{m}$ )
(1) For every basis $a_{i}(1 \leq i \leq n)$ of $M$ exists a basis $b_{j}(1 \leq j \leq m)$ for $N$ and some lower triangular matrix $A$ such that $\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{n}\right)=\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right) A$. The rows of $A$ are unique modulo $a_{i, i}$.
(2) For every basis $b_{i}(1 \leq i \leq n)$ of $N$ exists a basis $a_{j}(1 \leq j \leq m)$ of $M$ and some lower triangular matrix $A$ such that $\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{n}\right)=A\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)$. The columns of $A$ are unique modulo $a_{i, i}$.
(3) In $N$ and $M$ we can find bases $a_{i}(1 \leq i \leq n)$ and $b_{j}(1 \leq j \leq m)$ such that $b_{i}=\varepsilon_{i} a_{i}(1 \leq i \leq n) \varepsilon_{i} \mid \varepsilon_{i+1}(1 \leq i<n), \varepsilon_{0}:=1$. The $\varepsilon_{i}$ are uniquely defined by $N$ and $M$.

## Proof.

Application:
Let $N \subseteq M$ be two $R$-modules over some PIR $R$. Then by 2.36(3) we can find bases $\left(b_{i}\right)$ for $M$ and $\left(a_{i}\right)$ for $N$ such that $a_{i}=\varepsilon_{i} b_{i}$ for $\varepsilon_{i} \in R$ - possibly some $\varepsilon_{i}=0$ if the rank of $M$ is smaller than the one of $N$. But then

$$
N / M=\left(\dot{+} b_{i} R\right) /\left(\dot{+} a_{i} R\right)=\dot{+}\left(b_{i} R\right) /\left(a_{i} R\right)=\dot{+}\left(R / \varepsilon_{i}\right)
$$

thus, for $\mathbb{Z}$-modules, we obtain the complete structure of the quotient module as an abelian group. In particular, we see that for modules of the same rank, $\varepsilon_{n} M \subseteq N$ as $\varepsilon_{n}$ is the exponent of the quotient.
Furthermore, 2.36 (1) is used to effectively work in and with the quotient modules:
(1) After fixing systems of representatives for $R / d R$, we can use the triangular matrix to find unique representatives in the cosets. Let $m=\sum m_{i} b_{i}$ be arbitrary in $M$. Then $m-y_{1} a_{1}$ can arranged to have 1 st coefficient in $R / d_{1,1} R$ where $\left(d_{i, j}\right)_{i, j}$ is the lower triangular transformation matrix. Now $m-y_{1} a_{1}-y_{2} a_{2}$ can arranged to have the 2 nd coefficient in $R / d_{2,2} R$. As $d_{1,2}=0$, this will not affect the 1st coefficient. Inductively, all coefficients are in the appropriate residue systems. Since each of the reductions is unique, so is the result. This
is sometimes written as $m \bmod \left(d_{i, j}\right)_{i, j}$. Note that this depends on the bases of $N$ and $M$. It can be made to depend on the basis of $M$ only by forcing the transformation to be in HNF. Since this is unique, the reduction then is canonical.
(2) The size $|M / N|$ is the determinant of the triangular matrix, hence the product of the diagonal.

Lastly, let $M(A)$ the the $R$-submodule of $R^{n}$ generated by the columns of the matrix $A$ and let $\lambda \in R$ such that $\lambda R^{n} \subseteq M(A)$ (this forces $A$ to be of full rank!). Then
(1) $M(A)=M\left(A \mid \lambda I_{n}\right)$
(2) Assuming $A$ to be square, then $\operatorname{det}(A) R^{n} \subseteq M(A)$
(3) Let $\varepsilon_{n}$ be the largest elementary divisor of $A$ (hence the exponent of $R^{n} / M(A)$ as $R$-torsion module). Then $\varepsilon_{n} R^{n} \subseteq M(A)$.
(4) We have $\mu \lambda R^{n} \subseteq M(A)$ for all $\mu \in R$.

Under the assumptions, $R^{n} / M(A)$ is a $R / \lambda R$-module. If $R$ is a PID, then $R / \lambda R$ is still a PIR, so we can compute the structure (or a minimal set of generators) of $R^{n} / M(A)$ using the Hermite or Smith techniques over $R / \lambda R$. In particular for $R=\mathbb{Z}$ we see that this way, regardless of the algorithm used, coefficient explosion can not happen. However, this will only compute say a $R / \lambda R$ set of generators for $R^{n} / M(A)$. In order to find generators for $M(A)$ we have to supplement a lift by generators of $\lambda R^{n}$.
To see the problem: Let $A:=\left(\begin{array}{ll}4 & 0 \\ 2 & 2\end{array}\right)$ Then clearly, $\lambda=4$ is a possible choice. But over $\mathbb{Z} / 4 \mathbb{Z}$ we obtain $\left(\begin{array}{ll}0 & 0 \\ 2 & 2\end{array}\right)$ which lifts not to a basis for $M(A)$. There are (at least) two ways to solve this. Firstly, we can work using a multiple of $\lambda, \lambda^{2}$ or even $2 \lambda$. It can be shown, that a suitable multiple will solve the problem. The second alternative is to follow the computation over $R / \lambda R$ by one over $R$. The idea being that most of the "hard work" will already have been done. The final computation thus being easy.
In both approaches an additional complication is the non-uniqueness of the HNF if $R$ has zero-divisors.

## 4. Algorithms Round2

Given a prime $p \in \mathbb{Z}$ and some polynomial $f$ defining the order $\mathcal{O}:=\mathbb{Z}[t] / f$, in most cases the Round 2 will show that $\mathcal{O}$ is already $p$-maximal, or, it will be $p$-maximal after one iteration (i. e. the ring of multipliers of $\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$ is $p$-maximal). In this special situation, there is a very fast way of performing the computations:
Theorem 2.37 (Dedekind's criterion): Let $f \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ be monic and irreducible, $p \in \mathbb{Z}$ a prime. Over $\mathbb{Z} / p[t]$ write

$$
\bar{f}=\prod \bar{f}_{i}^{e_{i}}
$$

with $f_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ monic such that $\bar{f}_{i} \in(\mathbb{Z} / p)[t]$ is irreducible. Define $\bar{g}:=\Pi \bar{f}_{i}$ and $\bar{h}:=\prod \bar{f}_{i}^{e_{i}-1}$, and $g, h \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ monic and finally

$$
\bar{T}:=\operatorname{gcd}\left(\bar{g}, \bar{h}, \overline{\frac{1}{p}(f-g h)}\right)
$$

(1) $\mathcal{O}=\mathbb{Z}[t] / f$ is $p$-maximal iff $\bar{T}=1$
(2) $\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}=\langle p, g\rangle$
(3) $[\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}]=\left\langle\mathcal{O}, \frac{1}{p} U\right\rangle$ where $\bar{U}:=\bar{f} / \bar{T}$ and $U \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ monic.

Proof omitted: it is rather long and very technical, but not difficult. We also note, that this does not require a full $\bmod p$ factorisation: $\bar{g}$ is just the squarefree-part of $\bar{f}$ and $\bar{h}=\bar{f} / \bar{g}$.
Example 2.38: $f:=t^{3}-t^{2}-2 t-8$, then a test $\bmod 3$ will show $f$ to be irreducible. We have $d_{f}=-2^{2} \cdot 503$, so only $\mathcal{O}_{2}$ is difficult. Applying Dedekind: $\bar{f}=\bar{t}^{3}+\vec{t}^{2}=$ $\bar{t}^{2}(\bar{t}+1)$, hence $\bar{g}=\bar{t}(\bar{t}+1)$ and $\bar{h}=\bar{t}$, thus $f-g h=-2 t^{2}-2 t-8$ and $\bar{T}=$ $\left.\operatorname{gcd} \bar{t}(\bar{t}+1), \bar{t}, \bar{t}^{2}+t\right)=\bar{t}$, and we're not 2-maximal. Now $\bar{U}=\bar{f} / \bar{T}=\bar{t}(\bar{t}+1)$ hence $[\sqrt{2 \mathcal{O}} / \sqrt{2 \mathcal{O}}]=\left\langle\mathcal{O}, \frac{1}{2} t(t+1)\right\rangle=\left\langle 1, t, t^{2}, 1 / 2\left(t^{2}+t\right)\right\rangle=\left\langle 1, t, 1 / 2\left(t^{2}+t\right)\right\rangle$ is a larger order. Since $d_{f}$ was changed by a factor of 4 , the result is 2 -maximal and hence maximal.

We're now going to do the same example using "normal" Round2, i.e. without the Dedekind criterion. The 1 st step is to compute the 2 -radical. As $2<3=\operatorname{deg} L$, we cannot use the trace-radical. We will use the fact that by $2.12, \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}=\left\{x \in \mathcal{O} \mid x^{k} \in\right.$ $p \mathcal{O}\}$ for all $k \geq n$. Furthermore, $p \mathcal{O} \subseteq \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$, so we're going to work in $V:=\mathcal{O} / p \mathcal{O}$ again, here we have $\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}+p \mathcal{O}=\left\{x \in V \mid x^{k}=0\right\}$ and $V$ is a $\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z}$-module. For $p=2, \mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z}=\mathbb{F}_{p}$ is a field of positive characteristic $p$, hence $x \mapsto x^{p^{l}}$ is a $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-linear map. Choose $l$ so that $p^{l} \geq n$ and define

$$
\varphi: V \rightarrow V: x \mapsto x^{p^{l}}
$$

then $\operatorname{ker} \varphi=\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}+p \mathcal{O}$ :
Here, $n=3, p=2$, so $l=2$. We need to compute $\omega_{i}^{4}$ for $\omega_{i}$ a basis of $\mathcal{O}$, so $1^{4}=1$, $\rho^{4}=\rho \rho^{3}=\rho\left(\rho^{2}+2 \rho+8\right)=\rho^{3}+2 \rho^{2}+8 \rho=\left(\rho^{2}+2 \rho+8\right)+2 \rho^{2}+8 \rho=3 \rho^{2}+10 \rho+8 \equiv \rho^{2}$ $(\bmod 2)$. For $\omega_{2}=\rho^{2}$, we get $\rho^{8}=\left(\rho^{4}\right)^{2} \equiv\left(\rho^{2}\right)^{2}=\rho^{4} \equiv \rho^{2}$.
Clearly, $\operatorname{ker} \varphi=\left\langle\rho+\rho^{2}\right\rangle$, hence $\sqrt{2 \mathcal{O}}=\left\langle 2, \rho+\rho^{2}\right\rangle$. From here we can compute a basis.

Next, we need the ring of multipliers. Let $A, B \subseteq \mathcal{O}$ be ideals with $\mathbb{Z}$-bases $a_{i}$ for $A, b_{i}$ for $B$ and $\omega_{i}$ for $\mathcal{O}$. Then $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)=\left(\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{n}\right) M_{A}$ and $\left(\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{n}\right)^{t} b_{i}=$
$M_{b_{i}}\left(\omega_{1}, \ldots, \omega_{n}\right)^{t}$. So we have $x=\sum x_{i} \omega_{i}, x b_{j}=\sum y_{i} \omega_{i}$ and $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) M_{b_{j}}=$ $\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$. Furthermore, $x=\sum x_{i} \omega_{i} \in A$ iff $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n}\right)^{t} M_{A}$. Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
{[A / B] } & =\{x \in L \mid x B \in A\} \\
& =\left\{x \in L \mid \forall i: x b_{i} \in A\right\} \\
& =\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in K^{n} \mid \forall i:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) M_{b_{i}} \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n}\right)^{t} M_{A}\right\} \\
& =\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in K^{n} \mid \forall i:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) M_{b_{i}} M_{A}^{-1} \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n}\right)^{t}\right\} \\
& =\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in K^{n} \mid\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)\left(M_{b_{1}} M_{A}^{-1}|\ldots| M_{b_{n}} M_{A}^{-1}\right) \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n^{2}}\right)^{t}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $T \in \operatorname{Gl}\left(n^{2}, \mathbb{Z}\right)$ arbitrary, then

$$
=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in K^{n} \mid\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)\left(M_{b_{1}} M_{A}^{-1}|\ldots| M_{b_{n}} M_{A}^{-1}\right) T \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n^{2}}\right)^{t}\right\}
$$

Specifically, let $(H \mid 0)$ the column-HNF of the large matrix, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in K^{n} \mid\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) H \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n}\right)^{t}\right\} \\
& =\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in K^{n} \mid\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{n}\right)^{t} H^{-1}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

We now specialise this to $A=B$ and note that $M_{a_{i}} M_{A}^{-1}$ has to be integral, i.e. $\in \mathbb{Z}^{n \times n}$ even though $M_{A}^{-1}$ is not.
Continuing with the example:

$$
A=\sqrt{2 \mathcal{O}}=\left\langle 2, \rho+\rho^{2}\right\rangle
$$

So $M_{A}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1\end{array}\right), M_{2}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2\end{array}\right), M_{2 \rho}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 16 & 4 & 2\end{array}\right)$ and $M_{\rho+\rho^{2}}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}0 & 1 & 1 \\ 8 & 2 & 2 \\ 16 & 12 & 4\end{array}\right)$.
Hence $M_{2} M_{A}^{-1}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2\end{array}\right), M_{2 \rho} M_{A}^{-1}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 8 & 1 & 2\end{array}\right), M_{\rho+\rho^{2}} M_{A}^{-1}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}0 & 0 & 1 \\ 4 & 0 & 2 \\ 8 & 4 & 4\end{array}\right)$ and $M_{A}^{-1}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2\end{array}\right)$. So the big matrix will be

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 2 & 4 & 0 & 2 \\
0 & -1 & 2 & 8 & 1 & 2 & 8 & 4 & 4
\end{array}\right)
$$

The column-Hermite form is

$$
\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 2
\end{array}\right)
$$

with inverse

$$
\frac{1}{2}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
2 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 2 & 0 \\
0 & -1 & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

So that the new order is

$$
\mathcal{O}_{2}=\mathbb{Z}+\mathbb{Z} \rho+\mathbb{Z} \frac{1}{2}\left(\rho^{2}-\rho\right)
$$

What's next? (i.e. next year or in projects) Complexity of the procedure:

Theorem 2.39 (Chistov): The computation of a maximal order starting with a monic irreducible $f \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ is polynomial time equivalent to finding the largest squarefree factor of $d_{f}$

Looking at our algorithms, all is based on linear algebra hence polynomial time. Thus the procedure is essentially optimal. (There are other, even more optimal approaches, but in general, the hard bit is finding the primes $p$ ).

All we have done (well: most) applies as well to the situation where $\mathbb{Z}$ is replaced by any PID, for example $R=k[x]$ and in particular $R=\mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$. Then $R[t] / f$ is essentially a plane curve and can be analysed with tools from geometry as well.

Further generalisations are $R=\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ (which is harder as $R$ is no PID in general), to allow polynomials that are only square-free or even non-commutative rings (representation theory).

## CHAPTER 3

## Lattices

## 1. Introduction

Definition 3.1: Let $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{k} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be $\mathbb{R}$-linear independent, then

$$
\Lambda:=\dot{+} \mathbb{Z} b_{i}
$$

is called a lattice or, sometimes, a $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice in $\mathbb{R}^{n} . d(\Lambda):=\left(\operatorname{det}\left(\left(b_{i}^{t} b_{j}\right)_{i, j}\right)\right)^{1 / 2}$ is called lattice discriminant. We set $\Pi(\Lambda):=\left\{\sum \lambda_{i} b_{i} \mid 0 \leq \lambda_{i}<1\right\}$ as the fundamental domain of $\Lambda$. A submodule $\Lambda^{\prime}<\Lambda$ is called a sublattice if $\Lambda^{\prime}$ is a lattice as well.

Remark 3.2: In general any measurable subset $\Pi \subset \mathbb{R}^{n}$ such that

$$
\Lambda \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{R}=\dot{\bigcup}_{x \in \Lambda} x+\Pi
$$

is a fundamental domain.
Lemma 3.3: Let $\Lambda$ be a lattice with basis $\left(b_{i}\right)_{i}$.
(1) $d(\Lambda)=\operatorname{Vol}_{k}(\Pi(\Lambda))$
(2) $\Lambda^{\prime} \leq \Lambda$ a sublattice with basis $\left(c_{i}\right)_{i}$ and $\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n}\right)=\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{n}\right) U$ with $U \in \mathbb{Z}^{n \times n}$, then $d\left(\Lambda^{\prime}\right)=\operatorname{det}(U) d(\Lambda)$
(3) $(\Lambda: \Lambda)_{\mathbb{Z}}=d\left(\Lambda^{\prime}\right) / d(\Lambda)$

Proof. All this follows directly from measure theory and properties of the Lebesgue integral.

Algorithm 3.4 (Quadratic Supplement):
Input: $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ positive definite
Output: $Q=\left(q_{i, j}\right)$ triangular, such that

$$
x^{t} A x=\sum_{i=1}^{k} q_{i, i}\left(x_{i}+\sum_{j=i+1}^{k} q_{i, j} x_{j}\right)^{2}
$$

$Q:=A$
for $i:=1, \ldots, k-1$ do
3: $\quad$ for $j=i+1, \ldots, k$ do
4: $\quad q_{j, i}:=q_{i, j}, q_{i, j}:=q_{i, j} / q_{i, i}$
5: $\quad$ for $\mu, \nu=i+1, \ldots, k$ do
6: $\quad q_{\mu, \nu}:=q_{\mu, \nu}-q_{\mu, i} q_{i, \nu}$
7: for $j=1, \ldots, i-1$ do
8: $\quad q_{i, j}:=0$

Proof. This is just quadratic supplement:

$$
x^{t} A x=\sum_{i, j} x_{i} x_{j} A_{i, j}
$$

Focusing on $x_{1}$ :

$$
x^{t} A x=x_{1}^{2} A_{1,1}+x_{1} \sum_{j>1} x_{j}\left(A_{1, j}+A_{j, 1}\right) \sum_{i, j>1} x_{i} x_{j} A_{i, j}
$$

Now, we complete the square:

$$
\begin{aligned}
x^{t} A x & =A_{1,1}\left(x_{1}^{2}+2 x_{1} \sum_{j>1} \frac{A_{1, j}}{A_{1,1}} x_{j}\right)+\sum_{i, j>1} x_{i} x_{j} A_{i, j} \\
& =A_{1,1}\left(x_{1}^{2}+2 x_{1} \sum_{j>1} \frac{A_{1, j}}{A_{1,1}} x_{j}+\left(\sum_{j>1} \frac{A_{1, j}}{A_{1,1}} x_{j}\right)^{2}\right)-A_{1,1}\left(\sum_{j>1} \frac{A_{1, j}}{A_{1,1}} x_{j}\right)^{2}+\sum_{i, j>1} x_{i} x_{j} A_{i, j} \\
& =A_{1,1}\left(x_{1}+\sum_{j>1} \frac{A_{1, j}}{A_{1,1}} x_{j}\right)^{2}+\ldots
\end{aligned}
$$

Where the $\ldots$ indicate a $x^{t} A x$ with a smaller matrix $A$.
EXAMPLE 3.5: Let $A:=\left(\begin{array}{lll}2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2\end{array}\right)$ For $i=1$ :

$$
\left(\begin{array}{lll}
2 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 2 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 2
\end{array}\right) \rightarrow\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
2 & 1 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
1 & 2 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 2
\end{array}\right) \rightarrow\left(\begin{array}{lll}
2 & 1 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
1 & 3 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
1 & 1 / 2 & 3 / 2
\end{array}\right)
$$

For $i=2$ :

$$
\left(\begin{array}{lll}
2 & 1 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
1 & 3 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
1 & 1 / 2 & 3 / 2
\end{array}\right) \rightarrow\left(\begin{array}{lll}
2 & 1 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
1 & 3 / 2 & 1 / 3 \\
1 & 1 / 2 & 3 / 2
\end{array}\right) \rightarrow\left(\begin{array}{lll}
2 & 1 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
1 & 3 / 2 & 1 / 3 \\
1 & 1 / 2 & 4 / 3
\end{array}\right)
$$

And finally:

$$
\left(\begin{array}{lll}
2 & 1 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
1 & 3 / 2 & 1 / 3 \\
1 & 1 / 2 & 3 / 4
\end{array}\right) \rightarrow\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
2 & 1 / 2 & 1 / 2 \\
0 & 3 / 2 & 1 / 3 \\
0 & 0 & 4 / 3
\end{array}\right)
$$

Algorithm 3.6 (Enumeration):
Input: $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ pos. definite as well as $c>0$
Output: all $x \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$ such that $x^{t} A x \leq c$
1: use 3.4 to find $Q$
2: do a backtrack-search to find the points
Example 3.7: It's actually easy, but easier to show than to formally state. We take the same matrix as in the previous example and $c:=3$, so

$$
A:=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
2 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 2 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 2
\end{array}\right)
$$

and

$$
x^{t} A x=\frac{4}{3} x_{3}^{2}+\frac{3}{2}\left(x_{2}+\frac{1}{3} x_{3}\right)^{2}+2\left(x_{1}+\frac{1}{2} x_{2}+\frac{1}{2} x_{3}\right)^{2}
$$

Since this is a sum of 3 positive numbers, clearly we need $4 / 3 x_{3}^{2} \leq 3$, hence $x_{3}^{2} \leq 9 / 4$, or $x_{3} \in-1, \ldots, 1$. For each of the possibilities we now need to work. Lets start with
$x_{3}=1$. Start with $x_{3}=1$ and thus $4 / 31^{2}+3 / 2\left(x_{2}+1 / 3\right)^{2} \leq 3$ or $\left(x_{2}+1 / 3\right)^{2} \leq 5 / 3$, hence $x_{2}=0$ or $x_{2}=-1$. For $x_{2}=0$, we get $4 / 3+3 / 2(0+1 / 3)^{2}+2\left(x_{1}+0+1 / 2\right)^{2} \leq 3$ or $\left(x_{1}+1 / 2\right)^{2} \leq 3 / 2$, so $x_{1}=-1,0$.
Next we need to look at $x_{2}=-1, \ldots$
Theorem 3.8: Let $\Lambda$ be a lattice, then $\Lambda$ is discrete, i. e. for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}, c>0$, the set $\{z \in \Lambda \mid\|x-z\|\}<c\}$ is finite.

Proof. Direct consequence of 3.6 with $A:=\left(b_{i}^{t} b_{j}\right)_{i, j}$ for any basis $\left(b_{i}\right)$ for the lattice since $\|z-x\|^{2}=\left(z_{1}-x_{1}, \ldots, z_{k}-x_{k}\right) A\left(z_{1}-x_{1}, \ldots, z_{k}-x_{k}\right)^{t}$

Corollary 3.9: Let $\Lambda$ be a lattice. Then there is some $\delta>0$ such that

$$
\forall x \neq y \in \Lambda:\|x-y\|>\delta
$$

Corollary 3.10: Let $\Lambda$ be a lattice and $x_{n} \in \Lambda$ be a sequence. If $x_{n} \rightarrow x$ for some $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, then $x \in \Lambda$

## 2. Minkowski Theory

Theorem 3.11 (Minkowski's convex body theorem): Let $\Lambda$ be a $n$-dimensional (or full lattice) in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ and $C \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n}$ a convex and symmetric set and either
(1) $\operatorname{Vol} C>2^{n} d(\Lambda)$
(2) $\operatorname{Vol} C=2^{n} d(\Lambda)$ and $C$ compact.

Then $C$ contains a non-trivial lattice point $0 \neq x \in \Lambda \cap C$.
Proof. Let $\Pi:=\Pi(\Lambda)$ be a fundamental domain. Then $\mathbb{R}^{n}=\dot{U}(x+\Pi)$ and thus

$$
\frac{1}{2} C=\frac{1}{2} C \cap \mathbb{R}^{n}=\dot{\bigcup} \frac{1}{2} C \cap(x+\Pi)
$$

Assuming (1), we now get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Vol}(\Pi) & =d(\Lambda)<2^{-n} \operatorname{Vol} C=\operatorname{Vol} \frac{1}{2} C \\
& =\operatorname{Vol}\left(\dot{\cup} \frac{1}{2} C \cap(x+\Pi)\right) \\
& =\sum \operatorname{Vol} \frac{1}{2} C \cap(x+\Pi) \\
& =\sum \operatorname{Vol}\left(\frac{1}{2} C-x\right) \cap P i
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose, the sets $1 / 2 C-x$ are pariwise disjoint, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\operatorname{Vol} \bigcup\left(\frac{1}{2} C-x\right) \cap P i \\
& =\operatorname{Vol} \Pi=d(\Lambda)
\end{aligned}
$$

Which is absurd, hence the sets cannot be all disjoint and we can find $x \neq y \in \Lambda$ such that

$$
\frac{1}{2} C-x \cap \frac{1}{2} C-y \neq \emptyset
$$

Thus $c_{1}, c_{2} \in C$ sth $1 / 2 c_{1}-x=1 / 2 c_{2}-y$ and $1 / 2 c_{1}-1 / 2 c_{2}=x-y \in \Lambda \cap C$ is non-trivial. Here we need the symmetry to get $-1 / 2 c_{2} \in C$ and the convexity for $1 / 2 c_{1}+1 / 2\left(-c_{2}\right) \in C$.

For the second claim, take any sequence $\delta_{n} \searrow 0$, then $\operatorname{Vol}\left(1+\delta_{n}\right) C>2^{n} d(\Lambda)$, so by (1), there is a $x_{n} \in \Lambda \cap\left(1+\delta_{n}\right) C$. Since $x_{n} \in\left(1+\delta_{1}\right) C$ for all $n$ and since $C$ is compact, the sequence has to contain a converging subsequence. By 3.10 the limes is a lattice point as well, by construction it is in the intersection of all $\left(1+\delta_{n}\right) C$, hence in $C$.

Definition 3.12 (Successive Minima): Let $\Lambda$ be a $k$-dimensional lattice in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. Set

$$
M_{i}:=M_{i}(\Lambda):=\min \left\{\lambda>0 \mid \exists x_{1}, \ldots, x_{i} \in \Lambda \mathbb{R} \text {-lin. indep. and }\left\|x_{j}\right\|^{2} \leq \lambda\right\}
$$

the $i$-th successive minimum of $\Lambda$
Obviously, $M_{1} \leq M_{2} \leq \ldots \leq M_{k}$.
Lemma 3.13 (Enlarge Module): Let $M=\dot{+}_{i=1}^{n} \mathbb{Z} b_{i} \subseteq \Gamma, b_{n+1} \in \Gamma$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} m_{i} b_{i}=$ $0, \operatorname{gcd}\left(m_{i} \mid i\right)=1$. Now, find $U \in \operatorname{Gl}(n+1, \mathbb{Z})$ such that $\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n+1}\right) U=$ $(1,0, \ldots, 0)$ using 2.31, and $U^{-1}=: V=\left(v_{i, j}\right)$. Set $c_{i}:=\sum_{j=1}^{n+1} v_{i, j}$ for $i=1, \ldots, n+$ 1. Then

$$
\left\langle M, b_{n+1}\right\rangle=\dot{+}_{i=2}^{n+1} \mathbb{Z} c_{i}
$$

Proof. Since $U$ and $V$ are unimodular, clearly $\left\langle b_{i} \mid 1 \leq i \leq n+1\right\rangle=\left\langle c_{i}\right| 1 \leq i \leq$ $n+1\rangle$. By construction we have $U V=1$ and $m U=(1,0, \ldots, 0)$, so the 1 st row of $V$ is $m$ and thus $c_{1}=1$, hence the statement follows.

Lemma 3.14 (Change of basis): Let $M=\dot{+}_{i=1}^{n} \mathbb{Z} b_{i}$. Furthermore, let $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and $c_{i}:=\sum_{j=1}^{n} \gamma_{j} b_{j} \in M$ be given. Then we can supplement $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{i-1}, c_{i}$ to a basis of $M$ iff $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\gamma_{i}, \ldots, \gamma_{n}\right)=1$ holds.

Proof. Let $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\gamma_{i}, \ldots, \gamma_{n}\right)=1$ by 2.31 we can find some $U \in \operatorname{GL}(n-i+1, R)$ such that $\left(\gamma_{i}, \ldots, \gamma_{n}\right) U=(1,0, \ldots, 0)$. Now

$$
\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{n}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c|c} 
& \gamma_{1} \\
I_{i-1} & \vdots \\
& \gamma_{i-1} \\
\hline 0 & U^{-t}
\end{array}\right)=\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{i}, c, \ldots\right)
$$

is a basis, since the matrix is unimodular.
On the other hand, if we can supplement to a basis, then we can revert the argument.

Lemma 3.15: Let $\Lambda$ be a $k$-dimensional lattice in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. Then
(1) There exist $y_{i} \in \Lambda$ lin. indep. such that $\left\|y_{i}\right\|^{2}=M_{i}$
(2) Let $v \in \Lambda$ be such that $\|v\|^{2}=M_{1}$, then there is a basis $v=b_{1}, \ldots, b_{k}$ for $\Lambda$.

Proof. (1): induction on $i . i=1$ is obvious. Now assume we have $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i}$ such that $M_{j}=\left\|y_{j}\right\|^{2}$ for $j \leq i$ and we have $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{i+1}$ independent such that $\left\|x_{j}\right\|^{2} \leq$ $M_{i+1}$ for all $j$. Then there is some index $l$ such that $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i}, x_{l}$ are independent, wlog $l=i+1$. Now either $\left\|x_{l}\right\|^{2}=M_{i+1}$ and we're done, or $\left\|x_{l}\right\|^{2}<M_{i+1}$, but then $M_{i+1-r}<M_{i+1-r+1}=\ldots=M_{i+1}$ but $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i+1-r}, x_{l}$ are independent and too short.
(2): follows from 3.14 since for any minimal element, the gcd of the coefficients has to be 1 .

Example 3.16: In general, we cannot find a basis consisting of minima: Let $\Lambda:=$ $\mathbb{Z} e_{1}+\mathbb{Z} e_{2}+\mathbb{Z} e_{3}+\mathbb{Z} e^{4}+1 / 2 \mathbb{Z}\left(e_{1}+e_{2}+e_{3}+e_{4}+e_{5}\right) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{5}$. Then $e_{5} \in \Lambda$, so clearly $M_{i}=1$ for all $i$, however any basis must have the $1 / 2$ somewhere...

A slightly more careful analysis shows that for $n \leq 4$ we can always find a minimal basis, but for $n \geq 5$ in general not.

Theorem 3.17: There exists $C_{k} \in \mathbb{R}$ such that for all $k$-dimensional lattices

$$
M_{1}(\Lambda)^{k} \leq C_{k}^{k} d(\Lambda)^{2}
$$

Proof. We show that $C_{k}:=(4 / 3)^{1 / 2(k-1)}$ works. Induction on $k$. For $k=1$ this is trivial: $\Lambda=\mathbb{Z} b, M_{1}=\|b\|^{2}$ and $d(\Lambda)^{2}=\operatorname{det} b^{t} b=\|b\|^{2}$, so $C_{1}=1$ works.

Now, let $k>1$ and fix a basis $b_{i}$ with $\left\|b_{1}\right\|^{2}=M_{1}$. Now

$$
f(x):=f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right)=\left\|\sum x_{i} b_{i}\right\|^{2}=\sum x_{i} x_{j} b_{i}^{t} b_{j}
$$

then, using the quadratic supplement,

$$
f(x)=M_{1}\left(x_{1}+\sum_{j=2}^{k} q_{i, j} x_{j}\right)^{2}+g\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{k}\right)
$$

for some quadratic form $g$. Let $A$ be a matrix for $f$ and $B$ a matrix for $g$. Then $\operatorname{det} A=d(\Lambda)^{2}$ and $\operatorname{det} B=d(\Lambda)^{2} / M_{1}$. Let $y_{2}, \ldots, y_{k} \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$
g\left(y_{2}, \ldots, y_{k}\right)=\min \left\{g\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{k}\right) \mid 0 \neq\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{k}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}^{k-1}\right\}
$$

The induction hypothesis shows

$$
g\left(y_{2}, \ldots, y_{k}\right)^{k-1} \leq C_{k-1}^{k-1} d(\Lambda)^{2} / M_{1}
$$

Now choose $y_{1} \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $\left|y_{1}+\sum_{i=2}^{k} q_{1, j} y_{j}\right| \leq 1 / 2$, then $\sum y_{i} b_{i} \neq \Lambda \backslash\{0\}$ and

$$
M_{1} \leq f(y) \leq 1 / 4 M_{1}+\left(C_{k-1}^{k-1} d(\Lambda)^{2} / M_{1}\right)^{1 /(k-1)}
$$

Hence (subtract $1 / 4 M_{1}$ and divide by $3 / 4$ ):

$$
M_{1} \leq \frac{4}{3}\left(C_{k-1}^{k-1} d(\Lambda)^{2} / M_{1}\right)^{1 /(k-1)}
$$

Powering my $k-1$ and multiplication by $M_{1}$ :

$$
M_{1}^{k} \leq\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^{k-1} C_{k-1}^{k-1} d(\Lambda)^{2}
$$

Since $\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^{k-1} C_{k-1}^{k-1}=C_{k}^{k}$ we're done. Note $(k-1)+1 / 2(k-2)(k-1)=(k-1)(1+$ $1 / 2(k-2))=(k-1) 1 / 2 k$.

The Hermite-constants $\gamma_{k}$ are defined as the smallest $C_{k}$ such that the above theorem holds, i. e. $\gamma_{k}$ is minimal sth.

$$
M_{1}^{k} \leq \gamma_{k}^{k} d(\Lambda)^{2}
$$

for all $k$-dim. lattices $\Lambda$. Clearly, $\gamma_{k} \leq C_{k}$.
Theorem 3.18: Let $\Lambda$ be a $k$-dim. lattice, then

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{k} M_{i} \leq \gamma_{k}^{k} d(\Lambda)^{2}
$$

Proof. Let $y_{i} \in \Lambda$ be lin. indep. such that $\left\|y_{i}\right\|=M_{i}$ and $Q \in \mathrm{Gl}(k, \mathbb{Q})$ such that $\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{k}\right)=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k}\right) Q$, set $Y:=\left(y_{i}^{t} y_{j}\right)_{i, j}$ and $B:=\left(b_{i}^{t} b_{j}\right)_{i, j}$. For any $x \in \Lambda$ we now get two-representations:

$$
x=\sum x_{b, i} b_{i}=\sum x_{y, i} y_{i}
$$

where $x_{b, i} \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $x_{y, i} \in \mathbb{Q}$. Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|x\|^{2} & =\left(x_{b, 1}, \ldots, x_{b, k}\right) B\left(x_{b, 1}, \ldots, x_{b, k}\right)^{t} \\
& =\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right) Q B Q^{t}\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right)^{t} \\
& =\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right) Y\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right)^{t}=: f\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Next, we apply quadratic supplement to $f$ to obtain

$$
f\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right)=\sum q_{i, i}\left(x_{y, i}+\sum_{j>i} q_{i, j} x_{y, j}\right)^{2}=: \sum g_{i}\left(x_{y, i}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right)
$$

and note that $\prod q_{i, i}=\operatorname{det} Y$. We now define a new quadratic form

$$
h\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right):=\sum \frac{1}{M_{i}(\Lambda)} g_{i}
$$

Let $C$ be an associated matrix, then

$$
\operatorname{det} C=\operatorname{det} Y \prod 1 / M_{i}(\Lambda)=\operatorname{det} B / \operatorname{det} Q^{2} \prod 1 / M_{i} .
$$

Now we apply the previous theorem to get

$$
\min \left\{z^{t} Q C Q^{t} z: 0 \neq z \in \mathbb{Z}^{k}\right\}^{k} \leq \gamma_{k}^{k} \operatorname{det}\left(Q^{2} C\right)=d(\Lambda)^{2} / \prod M_{i}
$$

So we still need to show is that the minimum is at least 1 . Take any $0 \neq x \in \Lambda$, then $\left(x_{x, i}, \ldots, x_{x, k}\right) Q C Q^{t}\left(x_{x, i}, \ldots, x_{x, k}\right)^{t}=h\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right)$. Now find $m$ maximal such that $x_{y, m} \neq 0$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
h\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right) & =\sum_{i=1}^{m} \frac{1}{M_{i}} g_{i}\left(x_{y, i}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right) \\
& \geq \sum_{i=1}^{m} \frac{1}{M_{m}} g_{i}\left(x_{y, i}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{M_{m}} \sum_{i=1}^{k} g_{i}\left(x_{y, i}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{M_{m}} f\left(x_{y, 1}, \ldots, x_{y, k}\right) \\
& \geq \frac{M_{m}}{M_{m}}=1
\end{aligned}
$$

Here we used that $x$ is lin. indep to $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m-1}$ since $x_{y, m} \neq 0$, hence $f(x) \geq$ $M_{m}$.

## 3. LLL

Let $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{k}$ be a basis for $\Lambda \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n}$, then we perform Gram-Schmidt orthogonalisation: Set $b_{1}^{*}:=b_{1}, \mu_{i, j}:=b_{i}^{t} b_{j}^{*} /\left\|b_{j}^{*}\right\|$, and $b_{j}^{*}:=b_{j}=\sum \mu_{i, j} b_{j}^{*}$. Then ( $b_{i}^{*}$ ) are an orthogonal basis (but in general not an orthonormal basis). We fix $b_{i}, b_{i}^{*}$ and $\mu_{i, j}$ throughout this section.

Theorem 3.19 (Hadamard inequality):

$$
d(\Lambda) \leq \prod\left\|b_{i}\right\|
$$

Proof. From the construction of $b_{i}^{*}$ we have $Q \in \operatorname{Gl}(n, \mathbb{Q})$ such that

$$
\left(b_{1}^{*}, \ldots, b_{k}^{*}\right)=\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{k}\right) Q
$$

and $\operatorname{det} Q=1$. Furthermore: $\left\|b_{i}^{*}\right\| \leq\left\|b_{i}\right\|$ since

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|b_{i}\right\| & =\left\|b_{i}^{*}+\sum \mu_{i, j} b_{j}^{*}\right\| \\
& =\left\|b_{i}^{*}\right\|+\sum \mid \mu+i, j\| \| b_{j}^{*}\|\geq\| b_{i}^{*} \|
\end{aligned}
$$

since the vectors are orthogonal. Finally

$$
d(\Lambda)^{2}=\operatorname{det}\left(b_{i}^{t} b_{j}\right)=\operatorname{det} Q^{2} \operatorname{det}\left(\left(b_{i}^{*}\right)^{t} b_{j}^{*}\right)=\prod\left\|b_{i}^{*}\right\|
$$

and we're done.
Remark 3.20: (1) We have, in total,

$$
d(\Lambda)^{2} \leq \prod_{i=1}^{k} M_{i} \leq \gamma_{k}^{k} d(\Lambda)^{2}
$$

(2) The exact values for $\gamma_{k}^{k}$ are only known in a few cases:

| $n$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 24 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\gamma_{k}^{k}$ | 1 | $4 / 3$ | 2 | 4 | 8 | $64 / 3$ | 64 | 256 | $4^{24}$ |

(3) The best general estimate is due to Blichfeld

$$
\gamma_{k}^{k} \leq\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{k} \Gamma\left(1+\frac{k+2}{2}\right)^{2}
$$

(4) For $n=24$, the extremal lattice giving $\gamma_{24}$ is the (in)famous Leech-lattice. It boasts 196,560 shortest vectors (of length 2).

Definition 3.21: A basis $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{k}$ is called $L L L$-reduced iff
(1) $\left|\mu_{i, j}\right| \leq 1 / 2$ for $1 \leq j<i \leq k$
(2) $\left\|b_{i}^{*}+\mu_{i, i-1} b_{i-1}^{*}\right\|^{2} \geq \frac{3}{4}\left\|b_{i-1}^{*}\right\|^{2}$

LLL after the 3 inventors: A. Lenstra, H.W. Lenstra and L. Lovács. This was originally part of polynomial factorisation.

Theorem 3.22: Let $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{k}$ be LLL-reduced. Then
(1) $\left\|b_{j}\right\|^{2} \leq 2^{i-1}\left\|b_{i}^{*}\right\|$ for $1 \leq j<i \leq k$
(2) $d(\Lambda)=\Pi\left\|b_{i}^{*}\right\| \leq \Pi\left\|b_{i}\right\| \leq 2^{1 / 4 k(k-1)} d(\Lambda)$
(3) $\left\|b_{i}\right\| \leq 2^{1 / 4(k-1)} d(\Lambda)^{1 / k}$
(4) Let $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{t} \in \Lambda$ lin. indep., then for $j \leq t$ :

$$
\left\|b_{i}\right\|^{2} \leq 2^{k-1} \max \left(\left\|x_{1}\right\|^{2}, \ldots,\left\|x_{t}\right\|^{2}\right)
$$

In particular, $b_{1}$ is a "good" "approximation" to a shortest vector.

Proof. The proof is long and tedious, but simple. Furthermore, we have already done it in PraMa, so I omit it.

Algorithm 3.23 (LLL-Algorithm): A simple algorithm to compute the LLL reduced basis. By now, we actually have much more sophisticated algorithms available, but for not too large input this is still fine.

Input: $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{k}$ a basis for $\Lambda$
Output: a LLL-reduced basis $\left(c_{i}\right)_{i}$.
1: $c_{i}:=b_{i}, C_{i}:=\left\|c_{i}^{*}\right\|, m:=2$
2: $l:=m-1$
3: if $\left|\mu_{m, l}\right|>1 / 2$, then $r:=\left\lfloor\mu_{m, l}+1 / 2\right\rfloor, c_{m}:=c_{m}-r c_{l}$ and update $c_{i}^{*}, C_{i}$ accordingly. If $l<m-1$ then goto 5

4: if $C_{m}<\left(3 / 4-\mu_{m, m-1}^{2}\right) C_{m-1}$, then goto 6
5: $l:=l-1$. If $l>0$ goto 3 . If $m=k$ then end, else $m:=m+1$ and goto 2 .
6: swap $c_{m-1}$ and $c_{m}$ and update the $\mu$ and $C$. If $m>2$ then $m:=m-1$. Goto 2

In PraMa our proof was only valid for lattices in $\mathbb{Z}^{n}$ due to the lack of the successive minima. Here we can fill the gap.

Proof. We only show the termination, as by construction the basis returned will be LLL-reduced.

Set $\Lambda_{i}:=\dot{+} \mathbb{Z} c_{i}$ a sublattice of $\Lambda, D_{i}:=d\left(\Lambda_{i}\right)^{2}=\prod_{j=1}^{i} C_{j}$. By 3.17 we have

$$
M_{1}(\Lambda) \leq M_{1}\left(\Lambda_{i}\right) \leq \gamma_{i} d\left(\Lambda_{i}\right)^{2 / i}=\gamma_{i} D_{i}^{1 / i}
$$

In step 6 , we change $D_{m-1}$ by a factor of at least $3 / 4$ since the new $C_{m-1}$ will be shorter by such a factor. Since we have a global lower bound on the $D_{i}$, this cannot happen too often.

It is not too hard to believe that the algorithm takes only a polynomial number of steps, however to control the size (or precision) of the objects is harder.

There is a generalisation of the LLL, the MLLL (modified LLL) by M. Pohst that takes dependent input. While the algorithm is easy to state, the correct proof of termination is not.

## 4. Orders

Let $\mathcal{O} \subseteq L$ be an order and recall that we have the conjugates

$$
(.)^{(i)}: L \rightarrow \begin{cases}\mathbb{R} & i \leq r_{1} \\ \mathbb{C}\end{cases}
$$

that we sorted to have $(.)^{\left(r_{1}+i\right)}=\overline{(.)^{\left(r_{1}+r_{2}+i\right)}}$.
Let $c_{i}:=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}1 & i \leq r_{1} \\ 2 & \text { otherwise }\end{array}\right.$ and define

$$
T_{2}(\alpha):=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\alpha^{(i)}\right|^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{r_{1}+r_{2}} c_{i}\left|\alpha^{(i)}\right|^{2}
$$

the T-two-norm of $\alpha$. Careful: this is not a norm in any normal sense, although $\sqrt{T_{2}}$ is a proper (euclidean) norm.

For any $\lambda_{i}>0$ such that $\lambda_{r_{1}+i}=\lambda_{r_{1}+r_{2}+i}$, we also define

$$
T_{2, \lambda}(\alpha):=\sum \lambda_{i}\left|\alpha^{(i)}\right|^{2}
$$

In order to get lattices, we also define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Psi_{\lambda} L \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}: \alpha \mapsto\left(\lambda_{1} \alpha^{(1)}, \ldots, \lambda_{r_{1}} \alpha^{\left(r_{1}\right)},\right. \\
& \left.\quad \lambda_{r_{1}+1} \Re\left(\alpha^{\left(r_{1}+1\right)}\right), \lambda_{r_{1}+1} \Im\left(\alpha^{\left(r_{1}+1\right)}\right), \ldots, \lambda_{r_{1}+r_{2}} \Im\left(\alpha^{\left(r_{1}+r_{2}\right)}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Psi_{\sqrt{2}, \lambda} L \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}: \alpha \mapsto\left(\lambda_{1} \alpha^{(1)}, \ldots, \lambda_{r_{1}} \alpha^{\left(r_{1}\right)},\right. \\
& \left.\quad \sqrt{2} \lambda_{r_{1}+1} \Re\left(\alpha^{\left(r_{1}+1\right)}\right), \sqrt{2} \lambda_{r_{1}+1} \Im\left(\alpha^{\left(r_{1}+1\right)}\right), \ldots, \sqrt{2} \lambda_{r_{1}+r_{2}} \Im\left(\alpha^{\left(r_{1}+r_{2}\right)}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

to get

$$
\left\|\Psi_{\sqrt{2}, \lambda}(\alpha)\right\|^{2}=T_{2, \lambda}(\alpha)
$$

Theorem 3.24: $\Psi_{\lambda}$ and $\Psi_{\sqrt{2}, \lambda}$ are $\mathbb{Q}$-linear maps form $L \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$. For any order $\mathcal{O}$ the image $\Psi_{\lambda}(\mathcal{O})=: \Lambda$ is a lattice with discriminant

$$
d(\Lambda)=\frac{1}{2^{r_{2}}} \prod_{i=1}^{r_{1}} \lambda_{i} \prod_{i=1}^{r_{2}} \lambda_{r_{1}+i}^{2} \sqrt{|\operatorname{disc}(\mathcal{O})|}=\frac{1}{2^{r_{2}}} \prod_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} \sqrt{|\operatorname{disc}(\mathcal{O})|}
$$

Proof. We know, $\operatorname{disc} \mathcal{O}=\operatorname{det}\left(\left(\omega_{i}^{(j)}\right)_{i, j}\right)^{2}=$ : $\operatorname{det} \Omega^{2}$ for any integral basis. But for any complex $z$ we have

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
z & \bar{z}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\Re z & \Im z
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 1 \\
i & -i
\end{array}\right)
$$

Now

$$
\left(\begin{array}{c}
\Psi\left(\omega_{1}\right) \\
\ldots \\
\Psi\left(\omega_{n}\right)
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ccccccc}
1 & & & & & & \\
\\
& \ddots & & & & & \\
\\
& & 1 & & & & \\
\\
& & & 1 & 1 & & \\
i & -i & & & \\
& & & & & \ddots & \\
& & & & & & 1 \\
& & & & & & 1 \\
& & & & -i
\end{array}\right)=\Omega
$$

Since $\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}1 & 1 \\ i & -i\end{array}\right)=-2 i$ we can easily read off the determinants. We note that the difference between $\Psi$ and $\Psi_{\lambda}$ is just a scaling by a diagonal matrix.
Since the determinants are non-zero, the vectors are $\mathbb{R}$-linear independent, hence the image is a lattice as claimed.

Lemma 3.25: For all $\alpha \in \mathcal{O}$ we have

$$
\left(\prod \lambda_{i}\left|\alpha^{(i)}\right|^{2}\right)^{1 / n} \leq \frac{1}{n} T_{2, \lambda}(\alpha)
$$

Equality holds iff $\lambda_{i}\left|\alpha^{(i)}\right|=1$ for all $i$.
Proof. This is just the arithmetic-geometric means inequality.
Corollary 3.26: (1) For all $\alpha \in \mathcal{O}:|N(\alpha)|^{2 / n} \leq 1 / n T_{2}(\alpha)$
(2) For all $0 \neq \alpha \in \mathcal{O}$ :

$$
n \leq T_{2}(\alpha)
$$

(3) $M_{1}\left(\Psi_{\sqrt{2}, 1}(\mathcal{O})\right)=n$ since $T_{2}(1)=n$

## CHAPTER 4

## Units

## 1. Dirichlet

Notation 4.1: Let $L:=\mathbb{Q}[\alpha]:=\mathbb{Q}[t] / f$ be a number field. Then, in $\mathbb{C}$, the field of complex numbers, $f=\Pi\left(t-x_{i}\right)$. We now sort the zeroes $x_{i}$ to obtain $x_{1}, \ldots$, $x_{r_{1}} \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x_{r_{1}+1}=\bar{x}_{r_{1}+r_{2}+1}, \ldots x_{r_{1}+r_{2}}=\bar{x}_{r_{1}+2 r_{2}} \in \mathbb{C} \backslash \mathbb{R}$. The pair $\left(r_{1}, r_{2}\right)$ is called the signature of $L$.

For the rest of this chapter, we fix such a sorted set of conjugates.
Lemma 4.2: Let $\mathcal{O}$ be some order in $L, c>0$ be arbitrary and define $A:=\{a \in$ $\mathcal{O}\left|\left|a^{(i)}\right| \leq c \forall i\right\}$. Then $A$ is a finite set.

Proof. Follows from 3.24, only a re-statemant of the fact that $\Psi(\mathcal{O})$ is a lattice.
Lemma 4.3: Let $k \in \mathbb{N}$ be arbitrary and $\mathcal{O}$ any order in $L$. There there are only finitely many non-associate elements $a \in \mathcal{O}$ such that $|N(a)|=k$.

Proof. Define $\mathfrak{a}:=k \mathcal{O}$ and assume $a-b \in \mathfrak{a}$ and $|N(a)|=|N(b)|=k$. Then $a-b=r k$ and

$$
\frac{a}{b}=\frac{r k+b}{b}=r \gamma+1 \in R
$$

since, by $1.32 \gamma \in R$. Similarly, $b / a \in R$ as well, so $a / b$ is a unit. Since $|\mathcal{O} / \mathfrak{a}|=$ $k^{n}<\infty$ the lemma is proven.

Lemma 4.4: Let $\mathcal{O}$ be any order and $\alpha \in \mathcal{O}$, then the following are equivalent:
(1) There is some $k>0$ such that $\alpha^{k}=1$
(2) $\left|\alpha^{(i)}\right|=1$ for all $i$
(3) $T_{2}(\alpha)=n$

Remark 4.5: The set $T U(\mathcal{O}):=\left\{x \in \mathcal{O}^{*} \mid \exists k: x^{k}=1\right\}$ is a finite cyclic subgroup of $\mathcal{O}$, the group of torsion units. (It's finite by the previous lemma and cyclic since it's finite and contained in $L^{*}$ ).

Since the group $\mathcal{O}^{*}$ is an abelian group, it is also a $\mathbb{Z}$-module. If we can show finite generation, this remark characterises the torsion submodule. The main problem is the free-part.

REmark 4.6: If $r_{1}>0$, then $T U(\mathcal{O})=\{ \pm 1\}$ as the map $(.)^{(i)}: \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is injective and $T U(\mathbb{R})=\{ \pm 1\}$.
(In fact, this is true for almost all fields and orders, however, as the example of $\mathbb{Q}\left(\zeta_{n}\right)$ shows, clearly not always.)

Definition 4.7: Let $\varepsilon_{i} \in \mathcal{O}^{*}$ be units. They are called independent units iff whenever for $m_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$

$$
\prod \varepsilon_{i}^{m_{i}}=1
$$

we automatically have $m_{i}=0$ for all $i$. (so the $\varepsilon_{i}$ are $\mathbb{Z}$-free in $\mathcal{O}^{*}$ )
Theorem 4.8: Let $1 \leq i \leq r_{1}+r_{2}$ be fixed. Then there exists a unit $\varepsilon_{i} \in \mathcal{O}$ such that

$$
\varepsilon_{j}^{(i)} \begin{cases}<1 & j=i \\ >1 & j \neq i\end{cases}
$$

Proof. Our proof will be a pure existence proof, although, by replacing Minkowski by LLL, it can be made constructive.

We will construct a sequence $\gamma_{k} \in \mathcal{O}$ such that
(1) $\left|\gamma_{k}^{(j)}\right|<\left|\gamma_{k+1}^{(j)}\right|$ for $i=j$
(2) $\left|\gamma_{k}^{(j)}\right|>\left|\gamma_{k+1}^{(j)}\right|$ for $i \neq j$
(3) $N\left(\gamma_{k}\right) \leq C$ for some fixed $C$ independent of $k$.

Once we have such a squence we will invoke 4.3 to find $l$ and $k$ such that $\gamma_{l}$ and $\gamma_{k}$ are associated. Their quotient is then the unit we want.
Let $c_{1, i}>0$ be real numbers satisfying $\prod_{j=1}^{n} c_{1, j}=2 \sqrt{|d(\mathcal{O})|}$ and $c_{1, r_{1}+j}=c_{1, r_{1}+r_{2}+j}$. The set $C_{1}:=\left\{x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}| | x_{j} \mid \leq c_{1, j}\right\}$ is clearly symmetric and convex. Furthermore, by construction, $\operatorname{Vol} C_{1}=2 \sqrt{|d(\mathcal{O})|}=d(\Psi(\mathcal{O}))$. 3.11 then guarantees some nontrivial $\gamma_{1} \in \mathcal{O}$ such that $\Psi\left(\gamma_{1}\right) \in C_{1}$. Now set $c_{2, j}:=1 / 2\left|\gamma_{1}^{(j)}\right|$ for all $j \neq i$ and $c_{2, i} \geq\left|\gamma_{1}^{(i)}\right|$ such that $\prod c_{2, j}=\Pi c_{1, j}$ and $c_{2, r_{1}+j}=c_{r_{1}+r_{2}+j}$. This will also force (ii) to hold - eventually. Now 3.11 will find $\gamma_{2}$ with the required properties and we can iterate this procedure.

This can be strengthend to:
Theorem 4.9: Let $I \subset\left\{1, \ldots, r_{1}+r_{2}\right\}$ be a proper subset, then there exists a unit $\varepsilon_{I} \in \mathcal{O}$ such that

$$
\varepsilon_{I}^{(i)} \begin{cases}<1 & i \in I \\ \geq 1 & i \notin I\end{cases}
$$

As we do not need this, we will not prove this. A constructive version of this was used originally to compute units, however, this is now superseded by the class group method later in the term. Unfortunately, the short version is still needed for the structure result. Once the structure is known, the computation will use different techniques.
In order to continue with the units, we need more lattices: Let $r:=r_{1}+r_{2}-1$ to define a new map:

$$
L: K^{*} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{r}: \alpha \mapsto\left(c_{i} \log \left|\alpha^{(i)}\right|\right)_{1 \leq i \leq r}
$$

This is a group homomorphism from $K^{*}$ to $\left(\mathbb{R}^{r},+\right)$. By 4.4 we have $\left.\operatorname{ker} L\right|_{\mathcal{O}}=$ $T U(\mathcal{O})$.

Lemma 4.10: Let $\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O}^{*}$, then

$$
\log \left|\varepsilon^{(r+1)}\right|=-1 / c_{r+1} \sum_{i=1}^{r} c_{i} \log \left|\varepsilon^{(i)}\right|
$$

Proof. Trivial, since $|N(\varepsilon)|=1$
Lemma 4.11: Let $\varepsilon_{i} \in \mathcal{O}^{*}(1 \leq i \leq r)$ be independent units and $\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O}^{*}$ an additional unit. Then $\left\{\varepsilon, \varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{r}\right\}$ is $\mathbb{Z}$-dependent.

Proof. Clearly, $L\left(\varepsilon_{1}\right), \ldots, L\left(\varepsilon_{r}\right), L(\varepsilon)$ are $\mathbb{R}$-linear dependent (as $r+1$ vectors in $\mathbb{R}^{r}$ ), so we can write

$$
L(\varepsilon)=\sum t_{i} L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)
$$

for some $t_{i} \in \mathbb{R}$. Set now $m_{i}:=-\left\lfloor t_{i}\right\rceil=-\left\lfloor t_{i}+1 / 2\right\rfloor$, then

$$
L(\varepsilon)=\sum m_{i} L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)+\sum \underbrace{\left(t_{i}+m_{i}\right)}_{\in[1 / 2,1 / 2[ } L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)
$$

Set $\eta:=\varepsilon \prod \varepsilon_{i}^{m_{i}}$, then

$$
L(\eta)=\sum\left(t_{i}+m_{i}\right) L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)
$$

hence $\|L(\eta)\| \leq 1 / 2 \sum\left\|L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)\right\|$ is bounded. Set

$$
U_{c}:=\left\{\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O}^{*} \mid\|L(\varepsilon)\| \leq c\right\}
$$

then this is a finite set for all $c>0$, since by 4.10 we get $\log \left|\varepsilon^{(r+1)}\right|$ is bounded as well, so all conjugates are bounded, hence since $\mathcal{O}$ is a lattice, this defines a finite set.
So far we have shown that for all $\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O}$ there is some linear combination of the $\varepsilon_{i}$ such that

$$
\varepsilon \prod \varepsilon_{i}^{m_{i}} \in U_{c}
$$

where $c$ is independent of $\varepsilon$. In particular, since $U_{c}$ is finite, there are $i \neq j$ such that $\varepsilon^{i} \Pi \varepsilon_{i}^{m_{i}}=\varepsilon^{j} \Pi \varepsilon_{i}^{n_{i}}$, so

$$
\varepsilon^{i-j}=\prod \varepsilon^{m_{i}-n_{i}}
$$

as desired.
THEOREM 4.12: Units $\varepsilon_{i}$ are $\mathbb{Z}$-linear independent iff $L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)$ are $\mathbb{R}$-linear independent.
REmark 4.13: For any independent set of units $\varepsilon_{i} \in \mathcal{O}^{*}(1 \leq i \leq r)$ there is a finite set $U \subseteq \mathcal{O}^{*}$ of units, such that any unit $\varepsilon$ can be decomposed into a product of $\varepsilon_{i}$ and an additional unit $\in U$
Lemma 4.14: (1) $M \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ be a diagonally dominant matrix, ie $\left|m_{i, i}\right|>$ $\sum_{j \neq i}\left|m_{j, i}\right|$, then $M$ has full rank.
(2) Let $\varepsilon_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq r$ such that $\log \left|\varepsilon_{i}^{(i)}\right|>1$ and $\log \left|\varepsilon_{i}^{(j)}\right| \leq 1, i \neq j$. Then the units are independent.

Proof. (1) Assume $M t=0$ for $0 \neq t \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$. Fix $k$ such that $\left|t_{k}\right|$ is maximal, then $\sum m_{k, i} t_{i}=0=t_{k}\left(m_{k, k}+\sum_{i \neq k} t_{i} / t_{k} m_{k, i}\right)$ which is impossible since $\left|\sum_{i \neq k} t_{i} / t_{k} m_{k, i}\right| \leq$ $\sum_{i \neq k}\left|m_{k, i}\right|<\left|m_{k, k}\right|$.
(2) Since $\sum_{i=1}^{r+1} c_{i} \log \left|\varepsilon^{(i)}\right|=0$, the matrix $\left(L\left(\varepsilon_{1}\right), \ldots, L\left(\varepsilon_{r}\right)\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{r \times r}$ is diagonally dominant, hence of full rank, so the units are independent.

Theorem 4.15 (Dirichlet Unit theorem): Let $\mathcal{O}$ be an order, then there are units $\zeta, \varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{r} \in \mathcal{O}^{*}$ such that
(1) $T U(\mathcal{O})=\langle\zeta\rangle$
(2) $\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)_{i}$ are free
(3) $\mathcal{O}^{*}=\left\langle\zeta, \varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{r}\right\rangle$

Proof. We have shown in 4.13 that $\mathcal{O} / T U(\mathcal{O})$ is a finetely generated torsion free $\mathbb{Z}$-module, hence free. By 4.11 it is of rank at most $r$ since any more are $\mathbb{R}$-linear thus $\mathbb{Z}$-linear dependent. Finally, by 4.14 we have $r$ independent units, so $\mathcal{O}^{*} / T U(\mathcal{O})$ is free of rank $r$ as stated.
Definition 4.16: The previous theorem also shows that $L\left(\mathcal{O}^{*}\right)$ is a lattice of rank $r$. We call $d\left(L\left(\mathcal{O}^{*}\right)\right)=: \operatorname{reg} \mathcal{O}$ the regulator of $\mathcal{O}$. In abuse of notation, $\operatorname{reg} L:=\operatorname{reg} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ as usual.
Furthermore, for any independent units $\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{r}$ we define $\operatorname{reg}\left(\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{r}\right):=$ $d\left(\left\langle L\left(\varepsilon_{1}\right), \ldots, L\left(\varepsilon_{r}\right)\right\rangle\right)=\left|\operatorname{det}\left(L\left(\varepsilon_{1}\right), \ldots, L\left(\varepsilon_{r}\right)\right)\right|$
A maximal system of independent units $\varepsilon_{i}$ is called fundamental if

$$
\left\langle T U(\mathcal{O}), \varepsilon_{i} \mid i\right\rangle=\mathcal{O}^{*}
$$

Remark 4.17: The regulator is actually well defined and does not depend on the ordering of the conjugates.

Algorithmically, computing $\mathcal{O}^{*}$ is broken down into several steps:
(1) Find (somehow) lots of units $\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O}^{*}$ - we'll come back to this later. One option clearly is to follow the proof above, but it's not very efficient.
(2) Find (somehow) the dependencies between the units, eg. using $\mathbb{R}$-linear algebra on the $L$-side
(3) Deduct a basis for the group generated by the units using the relations
(4) Decide that the group is complete - or enlarge it

Since the larger the unit group, the smaller its regulator, the last step can be achieved by using (universal) lower bounds for regulators paired with some enlargement technique.

## 2. Lower Regulator Bound

Define

$$
L_{2}: K^{*} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}: \alpha \mapsto\left(\log \left|\alpha^{(i)}\right|\right)_{1 \leq i \leq n}
$$

and fix some (unkown) system of fundamental units $E_{1}, \ldots, E_{r}$. Then for any unit $\varepsilon=\zeta^{?} \Pi E_{i}^{m_{i}}$ we get

$$
\left\|L_{2}(\varepsilon)\right\|=\left(m_{i}\right)_{i}^{t} A\left(m_{i}\right)_{i}
$$

for some sym. pos. def. matrix $A=\left(L_{2}\left(E_{i}\right)^{t} L_{2}\left(E_{j}\right)\right)_{i, j}$. Computing carefully (due to the missing $c_{i}$ ), one sees

$$
\operatorname{det} A=\frac{n \mathrm{reg}^{2} \mathcal{O}}{2^{r_{2}}}
$$

and thus, using the successive minima:

$$
\operatorname{reg}^{2} \mathcal{O} \geq \frac{2^{r_{2}} \prod M_{i}(A)}{n \gamma_{r}^{r}}
$$

So, to get a "good" lower bound for reg we need the minima - but the minima for an unknown lattice. So we need to explore the link between $\Psi(\mathcal{O})$ and $L_{2}\left(\mathcal{O}^{*}\right)$, since the former is known. Since $\log$ is monotonous, we expect a link.
Lemma 4.18: Let

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
f: & x & \mapsto \sum x_{i}^{2} \\
g_{1}: & x & \mapsto \sum x_{i} \\
g_{2}: & x & \mapsto \sum \exp \left(2 x_{i}\right) \\
g_{3}: & x & \mapsto \sum \exp \left(-2 x_{i}\right)
\end{array}
$$

Then the minimum of $f: \mathbb{R}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ under the constraints $g_{1}(x)=0, g_{2,3}(x) \geq M$ and $x$ has at least $\lceil n / 2\rceil$ pos. entries satisfies

$$
\min f \geq \frac{n}{4} \log \left(\frac{M}{n}+\sqrt{\left(\frac{M}{n}\right)^{2}-1}\right)=\frac{n}{4} \operatorname{arcosh}^{2}\left(\frac{M}{n}\right)
$$

A minimum $x$ has at most 3 different values.

Proof. Via Lagrange multipliers.
Lemma 4.19: Let $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ be such $x_{1}=, \ldots,=x_{i}>0, x_{i+1}=, \ldots$, $=x_{i+j}=0$ and $x_{i+j+1}=\ldots=x_{n}<0$ satisfying $g_{1}(x)=0, g_{2,3}(x) \geq M$. Then

$$
f(x) \geq \frac{n-j}{4} \operatorname{arcosh}^{2}\left(\frac{M-j}{n-j}\right)
$$

Proof. Via last lemma.
Lemma 4.20: The function

$$
j \mapsto \frac{n-j}{4} \operatorname{arcosh}^{2}\left(\frac{M-j}{n-j}\right)
$$

is decreasing for $M / n \geq 1+\sqrt{2}$

Proof. Simple exercise in calculus.
Theorem 4.21: Let $\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O}^{*}$ be unit such that $T_{2}(\varepsilon), T_{2}\left(\varepsilon^{-1}\right) \geq M \geq 5 / 2 n$. If at most $j$ conjuagtes have $\left|\varepsilon^{(i)}\right|=1$, then

$$
\left\|L_{2}(\varepsilon)\right\| \geq \frac{n-j}{4} \operatorname{arcosh}^{2}\left(\frac{M-j}{n-j}\right)
$$

Proof. Setting $x_{i}=\log \left|\varepsilon^{(i)}\right|$ this is just a re-statement of the previous lemmas.

Set $S_{M}:=\left\{x \in \mathcal{O} \mid T_{2}(x) \leq M\right\} \cup\left\{x \in \mathcal{O} \mid x^{-1} \in \mathcal{O}, T_{2}\left(x^{-1}\right) \leq M\right\}, M^{*}:=$ $\frac{n-j}{4} \operatorname{arcosh}^{2}\left(\frac{M-j}{n-j}\right)$ for some suitable $j$, possible $j=n-2$ and finally

$$
M_{i}^{*}:=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\min \left(M^{*}, \min \left\{\lambda: \varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{i} \in S_{\lambda} \cap \mathcal{O}^{*} \text { indep. }\right)\right. \\
M^{*}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Theorem 4.22: Under the assumptions above, we have

$$
\operatorname{reg}^{2} \mathcal{O} \geq \prod M_{i}^{*} \frac{2^{r_{2}}}{n} \gamma_{r}^{-r}
$$

Note: the above theorem is the best known general procedure to get "decent" lower bounds.

Note: one can show a universal lower bound:

$$
\operatorname{reg} \mathcal{O} \geq 0.2052
$$

for all orders $\mathcal{O}$ in any number field $L$.

## 3. p-maximal Unit Groups

How is this used?
Given a system of independent units $U=\left\langle\zeta, \varepsilon_{i} \mid i\right\rangle$ we want to know if $U=\mathcal{O}^{*}$ holds. Suppose $p \mid\left(\mathcal{O}^{*}: U\right)$, then we can find $\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O} \backslash U$ such that $\varepsilon^{p} \in U$.
DEfinition 4.23: A subgroup $U \leq \mathcal{O}^{*}$ is called $p$-maximal iff

$$
U=U_{p}:=\left\{x \in \mathcal{O} \mid x^{p} \in U\right\}
$$

Hence, the goal is to either compute $U_{p}$ and/or verify $U=U_{p}$. Given that we don't know $\mathcal{O}^{*}$ we have to revert to the regulator bounds:

$$
\left(\mathcal{O}^{*}: U\right)=\frac{\operatorname{reg} U}{\operatorname{reg} \mathcal{O}} \leq \frac{\operatorname{reg} U}{L}
$$

where $L$ is any lower bound for $\operatorname{reg} \mathcal{O}$. So, if $p \mid\left(\mathcal{O}^{*}: U\right)$, then $p \leq \operatorname{reg} U / L$ and we simply compute $U_{p}$ for all such $p$, possibly enlarging $U$ in the process.

To compute $U_{p}$, we are now going to revert this: $p \mid\left(\mathcal{O}^{*}: U\right)$ iff $U \neq U_{p}$, so we are systematically trying to find $x \in U$ such that

- $\sqrt[p]{x} \in \mathcal{O}$
- $x \notin U^{p}:=\left\{y^{p} \mid y \in U\right\}$

Since clearly $x$ works iff $x y^{p}$ works, we "only" need to search in $U / U^{p}$ which is a finite set.
Lemma 4.24: The polynomial $f(t):=t^{p}-a \in L[t]$ is irreducible iff it has no roots.

Proof. If we have a root, then clearly $f$ is not irreducible. Now assume $f$ has no roots and let $\Gamma:=L[t] / f_{i}$ for an irreducible factor of $f$. Then, by assumption, $d:=\operatorname{deg} f_{i}>1$ and $N_{\Gamma / L}(t)^{p}=N\left(t^{p}\right)=N(a)=a^{d}$ showing that $a^{d}$ is a $p$-th power as well. But either $p=d$ and $f$ is irreducible, or $\operatorname{gcd}(p, d)=1$, hence $a$ is a $p$-th power and thus $f$ has a root.
Theorem 4.25 (Frobenius, Cebotarev): Let $K$ be a number field and $g \in \mathbb{Z}_{K}[t]$ be monic and irreducible of prime degree $p$. Then $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ has infintely many prime ideals $\mathfrak{q}$ such that $\bar{g} \in\left(\mathbb{Z}_{K} / \mathfrak{q}\right)[t]$ is irreducible.

Proof. This comes from analytic theory, stronger statements are known. The frequency of such prime ideals does depend on the Galois group of $g$.

There are even version of the theorem giving bounds on such ideals, however, those are too large to be useful here.
Corollary 4.26: Let $\varepsilon \in U \backslash U^{p}$, then $\varepsilon$ is a $p$-th power in $L$ iff $\bar{\varepsilon}$ is a $p$-th power for all $\mathfrak{p} \subset \mathbb{Z}_{L}$

Note: Since $\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}^{*}: \mathcal{O}^{*}\right)$ is finite, we will have $\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O}^{*}$ such that $\varepsilon$ is a $p$-th power in $L$, hence $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$, but not in $\mathcal{O}$.

We use this in the following algorithm:
Algorithm 4.27:
Input: A subgroup $U$ of finite index in $\mathcal{O}^{*}$, a prime $p$.
Output: $U_{p}$
1: $V:=U / U^{p}$
2: For lots of prime ideals $\mathfrak{q} \subset \mathcal{O}$ do
3: $\quad$ Let $\varphi_{\mathfrak{q}}: \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathcal{O} / \mathfrak{q}=: \mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{q}}$ and $\tilde{\varphi}_{\mathfrak{q}}: U / U^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{q}}^{*} /\left(\mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{q}}^{*}\right)^{p ،}$
4: $\quad V:=V \cap \operatorname{ker} \tilde{\varphi}_{q}$
5: $\quad$ if $V$ hasn't changed for several $\mathfrak{q}$, then leave the loop.
6: Fix a $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-free generating system $\bar{\eta}_{i}$ for $V$.
7: For each such $\eta_{i}$ test if there is a $\gamma_{i} \in \mathcal{O}^{*}$ such that $\gamma_{i}^{p}=\eta_{i}$
8: $U_{p}=\left\langle U, \gamma_{i} \mid i\right\rangle$
The algorithm is obviously valid, but not complete. Missing are
(1) How do we find prime ideals $\mathfrak{q}$ ? We will answer this soon.
(2) How do we work in $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ ?
(3) There are lots of $\mathfrak{q}$ that are pointless to test, we need only $p \mid((\mathcal{O}: \mathfrak{q})-1)$
(4) How do we test for the $\gamma$ ?
(5) How many $\mathfrak{q}$ do we (expect to) need?

To compute the roots we can easily give a solution: Assume $\gamma^{p}=\eta$, then $\left|\gamma^{(i)}\right|^{p}=$ $\left|\eta^{(i)}\right|$. Let $\lambda_{i}:=\sqrt[-p]{\left|\eta^{(i)}\right|}$, then $T_{\lambda}(\gamma)=n$ and $\gamma$ is a minimum of $T_{\lambda}$, hence the enumeration method will be able to find $\gamma$ or show its non-existence.
Or:
Fix any prime ideal $\mathfrak{q}$ and compute all roots of $t^{p}-\eta$ in $\mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{q}}$. For each such root $r$, use the Hensel/Newton procedure to compute $\gamma$ such that $\gamma^{p}-r \in \mathfrak{q}^{k}$ for some huge $k$. Then use LLL to find a small representative $\tilde{\gamma}$ in the coset $\gamma+\mathfrak{q}^{k}$. If $k$ is large enough, then $\tilde{\gamma}$ is unique the the root (if the root exists).
Both methods can be aided by a reduction procedure. The idea is to write a (large) unit $\eta$ as a product

$$
\eta=\prod \beta_{i}^{p^{i}}
$$

where the $\beta_{i}$ are "small". Then $\eta$ is a $p$-power iff $\beta_{0}$ is. We'll come back to this later, as it will be useful in the context of class groups as well.

## CHAPTER 5

## Dedekind Domains and the Class Group

## 1. Dedekind Domains

Definition 5.1: Let $R$ be a comm. and unitary domain, $\{0\} \neq B \subseteq Q(R)$ such that $a B \leq R$ for some $0 \neq a \in R$, then $B$ is called a fractional ideal. A fractional ideal $A$ is called invertible if there is some fractional ideal $B$ such that $A B:=\left\{\sum_{\text {fin. }} a_{i} b_{i} \mid a_{i} \in A, b_{i} \in B\right\}=R$

The fractional ideals clearly form a semi-group, even a monoid. Note: fractional ideals are no ideals in the usual sense. In what follows, the term ideal will always mean fractional ideal. A normal ideal is called integral.
Theorem 5.2: Let $R$ be comm. and unitary, then the following are equivalent:
(1) The fractional ideals form a group
(2) Every integral ideal is the product of prime ideals
(3) $R$ is noetherian, integrally closed and all non-zero prime ideals are maximal.

Such a ring is called Dedekind ring.
REmark 5.3: If $R$ is Dedekind, then it is a domain, since zero-divisors would produce non-invertible principal ideals.

Remark 5.4: Maximal orders $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ are Dedekind.
Let $R$ be a Dedekind ring with field of quotients $Q(R)$, then we define

$$
I_{R}:=\{A \mid A \text { is a fractional ideal }\}
$$

and

$$
P_{R}:=\left\{\alpha R \mid \alpha \in Q(R)^{*}\right\}
$$

Then clearly $P_{R} \leq I_{R}$, hence

$$
\mathcal{C}_{R}:=I_{R} / P_{R}
$$

the class group is a well defined abelian group. For a number field $L$ with maximal order $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ we define $I_{L}:=I_{\mathbb{Z}_{L}}, P_{L}:=P_{\mathbb{Z}_{L}}$ and $C_{L}:=C_{\mathbb{Z}_{L}}$ The main goal is to understand $\mathcal{C}_{L}$, in particular $h_{L}:=\left|\mathcal{C}_{L}\right|$ the class number. We will show that $h_{L}<\infty$. But first we'll deal with fractional ideals in more detail.
Lemma 5.5: $A \subseteq Q(R)$ is a fractional ideal iff $A$ is an $R$-module and $a A \subseteq R$ for some $a \neq 0$.
Lemma 5.6: Let $A, B$ fractional ideals then
(1) $A+B, A B$ and $A \cap B$ are fractional ideals
(2) $A^{\prime}:=[R: A]=\{x \in Q(R) \mid x A \subseteq R\}$ is a fractional ideal
(3) If $A B=R$, then $B=A^{\prime}$
(4) $A=(c)$, then $A$ is invertible $A^{\prime}=(1 / c)$
(5) the invertible ideals form a group

Proof. (1) clear
(2) Obviously, $A^{\prime}$ is an $R$-module. Let $y \in A \backslash\{0\}$, then we can find $0 \neq z \in \mathcal{O}$ such that $z y \in A \cap \mathcal{O}$, but then $z y A^{\prime} \subseteq \mathcal{O}$ as required.
(3) Clearly, $B \subseteq A^{\prime}$ and

$$
\mathcal{O}=A B \subseteq A A^{\prime} \subseteq \mathcal{O}
$$

thus $A A^{\prime}=\mathcal{O}$ as well, so

$$
A^{\prime}=A^{\prime} \mathcal{O}=A^{\prime} A B=\mathcal{O} B=B
$$

(4), (5) clear.

Remark 5.7: If $R$ is PID, then every non-zero ideal is invertible.
Lemma 5.8: Let $R$ be an integral domain.
(1) Let $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{r}$ be ideals and $Q$ a prime ideal such that $\Pi A_{i}^{v_{i}} \subseteq Q$ for some $v_{i} \geq 0$. Then there is some $k$ such that $A_{k} \subseteq Q$
(2) Let $\mathfrak{a}$ be an integral ideal and assume $\mathfrak{a}=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{v_{i}}$ for invertible prime ideals $\mathfrak{p}_{i}$ and $v_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then the factorisation is essentially unique (up to re-ordering).

Proof. (1) Assume this is wrong, i.e. for all $j$ we have $A_{j} \nsubseteq \mathfrak{q}$, then we can find $a_{i} \in \mathfrak{a}_{i} \backslash \mathfrak{q}$ and $\Pi a_{i}^{v_{i}} \in \Pi A_{i}^{v_{i}} \subseteq \mathfrak{q}$ contradicting $\mathfrak{q}$ being prime.
(2) Let $A=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{v_{i}}=\Pi \mathfrak{q}_{i}^{u_{i}}$ be two factorisations. Let $\mathfrak{q}_{1}$ be a minimal prime ideal wrt. containment among the $\mathfrak{q}_{i}$. Then clearly $A=\prod \mathfrak{q}_{i}^{u_{i}} \subseteq \mathfrak{q}$, hence by (1), we have some $\mathfrak{p}_{i} \subseteq \mathfrak{q}_{1}$. Now we multiply both sides by $\mathfrak{q}_{1}^{\prime}$ and recurse.

Remark 5.9: In a Dedekind ring $R$, every fractional ideal has a unique decomposition into prime ideals - with possibly negative exponents.

Definition 5.10: Let $R$ be a Dedekind domain and $A, B$ fractional ideals. Then
(1) $A \mid B$ iff there is some $C \leq R$ such that $A C=B$
(2) $C$ is called the greatest common divisor, gcd of $A$ and $B$ iff $C|A|$,$B and for$ all $D|A, D| B$ we also have $D \mid C$

Lemma 5.11: Let $R$ be a Dedekind ring and $A, B$ fractional ideals.
(1) $A \mid B$ iff $B \subseteq A$
(2) $\operatorname{gcd}(A, B)=A+B$

Proof. (1) If $A \mid B$ then we have $C \subseteq R$ such that $A C=B$, but clearly $B=A C \subseteq$ $A$.

If $B \subseteq A$ then $B A^{\prime} \subseteq A A^{\prime}=R$, hence using $C:=B A^{\prime}$ we get $A C=A A^{\prime} B=B$ as claimed.
(2) From (1): $A, B \subseteq \operatorname{gcd}(A, B)$, hence $A+B \subseteq \operatorname{gcd}(A, B)$ as well. On the other hand, $A, B \subseteq A+B$, hence $A+B \mid A, B$ so $A+B \mid \operatorname{gcd}(A, B)$ or $\operatorname{gcd}(A, B) \subseteq A+B$ and equality everywhere.

Lemma 5.12: Let $R$ be a Dedekind ring, then $R$ is UFD iff $h_{R}=1$, ie iff $R$ is PID.

Proof. We need to show that UFD implies PID if $R$ is Dedekind. Specifically, we want to show that every prime ideals is principal. Let $0 \neq \mathfrak{p}$ be a prime ideal and choose $0 \neq p \in \mathfrak{p}$, then $p R \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ and $p=\varepsilon \Pi \pi_{i}^{k_{i}}$ Thus also $p R=\langle p\rangle=\Pi\left\langle\pi_{i}\right\rangle^{k_{i}} \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$. By 5.8(1) we find $\left\langle\pi_{\mu}\right\rangle \subseteq \mathfrak{p}$ for some $\mu$, sice $\left\langle\pi_{\mu}\right\rangle$ is a non-zero prime ideal, it is maximal (since $R$ is Dedekind), so $\left\langle\pi_{\mu}\right\rangle=\mathfrak{p}$. Since the product of principal ideals is principal, and every ideal is a unique product of primes, every ideal is principal.
Theorem 5.13: Let $0 \neq A \subseteq R$ be an ideal in the Dedekind ring $R$ and $0 \neq a \in A$ be arbitrary. Then there exists some $b \in A$ such that $A=\langle a, b\rangle$.

Proof. We have $A=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{v_{i}}$ and, since $a \in A$, so $A \mid a R$ we get $a R=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{v_{i}+l_{i}} \Pi \mathfrak{q}_{i}^{o_{i}}$. Now use the CRT to find $b \equiv x_{i} \bmod \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{v_{i}+1}$ for $x_{i} \in \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{v_{i}} \backslash \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{v_{i}+1}$ and $b \equiv 1 \bmod \mathfrak{q}_{i}$. Then $A=\langle a, b\rangle$.

Lemma 5.14: Let $R$ be a Dedekind ring, $A, B \leq R$ non-trivial ideals. Then we can find $C \leq R$ such that $\operatorname{gcd}(C, A B)=R$ and $A C$ is a principal ideal.

Proof. Write $A=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{\mu_{i}}$ and $B=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{\nu_{i}}$, now choose $x_{i} \in \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{\mu_{i}} \backslash \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{\mu_{i}+1}$ and use CRT to find $x \equiv x_{i} \bmod \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{\mu_{i}+1}$, so that $x \in \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{\mu_{i}} \backslash \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{\mu_{i}+1}$ for all $i$. For the factorisation we therefore get $x R=\Pi \mathfrak{p}_{i}^{\mu_{i}} \Pi \mathfrak{q}_{i}^{l_{i}}=: A C$
Lemma 5.15: Let $R$ be a Dedekind ring, $\mathfrak{p}$ a non-zero prime ideal and $N \geq 0$, then

$$
(R / \mathfrak{p},+) \cong\left(\mathfrak{p}^{n} / \mathfrak{p}^{n+1},+\right)
$$

Proof. Choose any $a \in \mathfrak{p}^{n} \backslash \mathfrak{p}^{n+1}$ and define

$$
\varphi:(R,+) \rightarrow\left(\mathfrak{p}^{n} / \mathfrak{p}^{n+1},+\right): x \mapsto a x
$$

which clearly is a group homomorphism with kernel

$$
\operatorname{ker} \varphi=\left\{x \mid a x \in \mathfrak{p}^{n+1}\right\}
$$

since $a x \in \mathfrak{p}^{n+1}$ is equivalent to $\mathfrak{p}^{n+1} \mid a x R$ and since $\mathfrak{p}^{n} \mid a R, \mathfrak{p}^{n+1} \not \backslash a R$ we get $\mathfrak{p} \mid x R$ or $x \in \mathfrak{p}$. Next, we'd like to show that $\varphi$ is surjective. Let $y \in \mathfrak{p}^{n}$ be arbitrary. Since $\mathfrak{p}^{n}=\operatorname{gcd}\left(a R, \mathfrak{p}^{n+1}\right)=a R+\mathfrak{p}^{n+1}$ we can write $y=a x+p$ for some $p \in \mathfrak{p}^{n+1}$ as claimed.
Definition 5.16: Let $R$ be a comm and unitary ring and $A \leq R$ an ideal. Then $N(A):=|R / A|$ (which can be infinite) is called the norm of $A$.
Corollary 5.17: Let $R$ be a ring such that $N(A)<\infty$ for all non-trivial ideals A. Then
(1) $N(A) \in A$ since by construction, $N(A)$ is an exponent for the finite ring $R / A$ giving $N(A) r \in A$ for all $r \in R$.
(2) If $\mathfrak{p}$ is a prime ideal, then $N(\mathfrak{p})=p^{k}$ for some prime number $p$ (since $R / A$ is a finite integral domain, hence a field)
In particular, for any order $\mathcal{O}$ we know that $N(A)$ is finite.
Theorem 5.18: Let $A, B$ be ideals in the Dedekind ring $R$, then

$$
N(A) N(B)=N(A B)
$$

Proof. Exercise.

Remark: a slightly more careful analysis shows that the norm is multiplicative on invertible ideals in arbitrary orders.
Lemma 5.19: Let $\mathfrak{p}$ be a non-zero prime ideal in some order $\mathcal{O}$, then
(1) $x^{N(\mathfrak{p})} \equiv x \bmod \mathfrak{p}$ for all $x \in \mathcal{O}$
(2) $N(\mathfrak{p})=\min \left\{k \mid x^{k} \equiv x \bmod \mathfrak{p} \forall x \in \mathcal{O}\right\}$

Proof. Under our assumption, $R / \mathfrak{p}$ is a finite field with $p^{k}$ elements, thus $(R / \mathfrak{p})^{*}$ is a cyclic group of order $p^{k}-1$.

Lemma 5.20: The set

$$
\{A \leq \mathcal{O} \mid N(A) \leq B\}
$$

is finite for all $B>0$ and any order $\mathcal{O}$

Proof. Let $\left(\omega_{i}\right)_{i}$ be a fixed basis for $\mathcal{O}$, then any ideal $A$ can be represented using a unique HNF basis wrt $\omega_{i}$. Since the product of the diagonal elements is the norm, the bound on the norm bounds all diagonal elements. The off-diagonal elements are rescticted by the diagonal, given a finite total number.

Note: in the case of $\mathcal{O}$ being integrally closed (Dedekind) we can argue differently: We know that every prime ideal contains a prime-number, 2.12 shows that at most $n$ prime ideals share the same prime number. The norm is multiplicative (in this case), so any ideal of norm $N(A) \leq B$ is the product of prime ideals containing primes $p \leq B$. So this involves only finitely many prime-numbers, hence finitely many prime ideals.

Theorem 5.21: For any number field $L$ there is a constant $C_{L}$ such that for any ideal $A$ we can find an integral ideal $B$ such that
(1) $A=\alpha B$ for some $\alpha \in L$
(2) $N(B) \leq C_{L}$

Proof. Wlog. assume that $A$ is integral already. Set $B:=A^{-1}$ such that $A B=\mathcal{O}$ and choose $\mu$ as the 1st basis element of a LLL basis for $\Psi(\mathcal{O})$. Then

$$
T_{2}(\mu)=\|\Psi(\mu)\|^{2} \leq 2^{(n-1) / 2}\left(\left|d_{L}\right|\right)^{1 / n} N(B)^{2 / n}
$$

thus, using 3.26:

$$
|N(\mu)|^{2} \leq\left(T_{2}(\mu) / n\right)^{n} \leq 2^{n(n-1) / 2}\left|d_{L}\right| N(B)^{2}
$$

Finally, note $A \mu \subseteq \mathcal{O}$ since $\mu \in A^{-1}, N(B)=1 / N(A)$ and

$$
N(A \mu)=N(A)|N(\mu)| \leq 2^{n(n-1) / 4}\left|d_{L}\right|^{1 / 2}
$$

as claimed.
Corollary 5.22: For any number field $L$, we have $h_{L}<\infty$.

Proof. By 5.21 any ideal class has an integral representative of norm $\leq C_{L}$, by 5.20 this is a finite set.

Theorem 5.23 (Minkowski): Every ideal class in every number field $L$ contains an integral representative $A$ of norm

$$
N(A) \leq \frac{n!}{n^{n}}\left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)^{r_{2}} \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}
$$

Note: $M_{L}:=\frac{n!}{n^{n}}\left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)^{r_{2}} \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}$ is called the Minkowski-bound of $L$. The (omitted) proof defines a fairly complicated convex symetric set $C_{L}$ to invoke Minkowski's convex body theorem to replace the $\mu$ used in the proof of 5.21 .

Note: in both 5.21 and 5.23 , the constants are of the form $C=C(n) \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}$. In fact all bounds known that do not depend on the GRH are of this form - with various $C(n)$ s. Minkoswki is much better than the LLL-based one, but both are too large for interesting fields. We'll come back to this problem later.
Corollary 5.24: For all number fields $L \neq \mathbb{Q}$ we have $\left|d_{L}\right|>1$

## 2. Primes in Extensions

In order to compute class groups, we need to get a handle on ideals, in particular on prime ideals in number fields.
Lemma 5.25: For any $0 \neq a \in \mathcal{O} \subset L$ we have $|N(a)|=N(a \mathcal{O})$

Proof. Let $\mathcal{O}=\dot{+} \mathbb{Z} \omega_{i}$, then $a \mathcal{O}=\dot{+} \mathbb{Z} a \omega_{i}$ hence $M_{a}=M_{a \mathcal{O}}$ and the statement follows.

Note: for $L / K$ a field extension, we also have $\mathbb{Z}_{L} \supset \mathbb{Z}_{K}$ and $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ is a $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ module (even a finitely generated one, as $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ is fin. gen. over $\mathbb{Z}$ ), but no longer a free module, hence we have to be more careful with our module arguments.
Lemma 5.26: Let $\mathfrak{p}$ be a prime ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ and $\mathfrak{q}$ be a prime in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$, then the following are equivalent:
(1) $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq \mathfrak{q}$
(2) $\mathfrak{p}=\mathfrak{q} \cap K$
(3) $\mathfrak{p}=\mathfrak{q} \cap \mathbb{Z}_{K}$

In this case we say that $\mathfrak{q}$ lies above $\mathfrak{p}$ or that $\mathfrak{p}$ lies below $\mathfrak{q}$

Proof. The only item worth mentioning is that we need that $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ is integrally closed for $(2) \Rightarrow(3)$.

Definition 5.27: Let $\{0\} \neq \mathfrak{p}$ be a prime in $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ and $\mathfrak{q} \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ above, then
(1) $e:=\max \left\{i\left|\mathfrak{q}^{i}\right| \mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}\right\}$ is called the ramification degree of $\mathfrak{q}$ over $\mathfrak{p}, e=e(\mathfrak{q} / \mathfrak{p})$
(2) $\mathfrak{q}$ is called ramified over $\mathfrak{p}$ iff $e(\mathfrak{q} / \mathfrak{p})>1$
(3) $\mathfrak{p}$ is called ramified in $L / K$ iff exists some $\mathfrak{q}$ above $\mathfrak{p}$ such that $\mathfrak{q}$ is ramified over $\mathfrak{p}$
Lemma 5.28 : Let $\mathfrak{p}$ be a prime in $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$, then there exists some $\mathfrak{q}$ above $\mathfrak{p}$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$.

Proof. If $\mathfrak{p}=\{0\}$ the statment is trivial, hence assume $\mathfrak{p}$ to be non-trivial. In $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ we have an ideal $A$ such that $A \mathfrak{p}=\mathbb{Z}_{\mathbb{K}}$, hence we can find $\gamma \in A \backslash \mathbb{Z}_{K}$ such that $\gamma \mathfrak{p} \subseteq \mathbb{Z}_{K}$. So $\gamma \mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L} \subseteq \mathbb{Z}_{K} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Suppose now that $\mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ is trivial, then $1 \in \mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, but then $\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, hence $\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}_{K}$ which is absurd. Since $\mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ is non-trivial, it has a non-trivial factorisation (or alternatively, there exists a maximal ideal containing $\mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ ).
Theorem 5.29: Let $\mathfrak{p}$ be a prime in $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ and $\mathfrak{q}<\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ be a prime above it. Then

$$
\chi: \mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{p}}:=\mathbb{Z}_{K} / \mathfrak{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{L} / \mathfrak{q}=: \mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{q}}: x+\mathfrak{p} \mapsto x+\mathfrak{q}
$$

is a well defined field embedding, hence $\mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{p}}$ is a subfield of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{q}}$. We call the degree $f:=f(\mathfrak{q} / \mathfrak{p}):=\mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{q}}: \mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{p}}$ the inertia degree of $\mathfrak{q}$ over $\mathfrak{p}$.

Proof. Since $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq \mathfrak{q}$ the map is well defined and non-zero, hence injective as a map between fields.

Corollary 5.30: Let $\mathfrak{p}, \mathfrak{q}$ as above, then $N(\mathfrak{q})=N(\mathfrak{p})^{f}$
Theorem 5.31: Let $\mathfrak{p}$ as above, then

$$
\mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod \mathfrak{q}_{i}^{e_{i}}
$$

with $e_{i}=e\left(\mathfrak{q}_{i} / \mathfrak{p}\right)$ and

$$
[L: K]=\sum e\left(\mathfrak{q}_{i} / \mathfrak{p}\right) f(\mathfrak{q} / \mathfrak{p})=: \sum e_{i} f_{i}
$$

Proof. This actually holds in more generality, but here we're going to use the finiteness of the class group to get a short proof.
Clearly we have

$$
N\left(\mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)=N\left(\prod \mathfrak{q}_{i}^{e_{i}}\right)=\prod N\left(\mathfrak{q}_{i}\right)^{e_{i}}=N(\mathfrak{p})^{\sum f_{i} e_{i}}
$$

. Since $h_{K}$ is finite, we also have $\mathfrak{p}^{h_{K}}=\lambda \mathbb{Z}_{K}$ for some $\lambda \in K$, hence

$$
N\left(\mathfrak{p}^{h_{K}}\right)=\left|N_{L / K}(\lambda)\right|=N(\mathfrak{p})^{h_{K}}
$$

and

$$
\left.N\left(\left(\mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)^{h_{K}}\right)=\left|N_{L / K}(\lambda)\right|=N_{K / \mathbb{Q}}\right)(\lambda)^{n h_{K}}=N(\mathfrak{p})^{n h_{K}}=N(\mathfrak{p})^{h_{K} \sum e_{i} f_{i}}
$$

and we're done.
Definition 5.32: Let $\mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod_{i=1}^{g} \mathfrak{q}_{i}^{e_{i}}$. Then
(1) $\mathfrak{p}$ is called inert iff $g=1$
(2) $\mathfrak{p}$ is called totally split iff $g=n$
(3) $\mathfrak{p}$ is called split iff $g>1$
(4) $\mathfrak{p}$ is called ramified iff some $e_{i}>1$
(5) $\mathfrak{p}$ is called totally ramified iff $e_{1}=n$
(6) $\mathfrak{p}$ is called unramified iff all $e_{i}=1$
(7) $\mathfrak{q}_{i}$ is called unramified iff $e_{i}=1$, ramified otherwise

Lemma 5.33: Let $\sigma \in \operatorname{Aut}(L, K)$ be a $K$-automorphism of $L$ and $\mathfrak{q}$ be a prime ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ lying above $\mathfrak{p}$. Then
(1) $\sigma \mathfrak{q}$ is a prime ideal above $\mathfrak{p}$ as well
(2) $f(\sigma \mathfrak{q} / \mathfrak{p})=f(\mathfrak{q} / \mathfrak{p})$
(3) $e(\sigma \mathfrak{q} / \mathfrak{p})=e(\mathfrak{q} / \mathfrak{p})$

Proof. Since $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq K$ we have $\mathfrak{p}=\sigma \mathfrak{p}$, thus (1) follows. For (2) we notice that $\sigma$ induces a field-isomorphism from

$$
\mathbb{F}_{\mathfrak{q}} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{\sigma \boldsymbol{q}}: x \mapsto \sigma x
$$

From $\mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\Pi \mathfrak{q}_{i}^{e_{i}}=\sigma \mathfrak{p} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\Pi \sigma\left(\mathfrak{q}_{i}\right)^{e_{i}}$ we get (3).
Lemma 5.34: Let $L / K$ be Galois, then the Galois group acts transitively on the prime ideals over the same prime, i. e. let $p$ be a prime ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ and $P_{1}, \ldots$, $P_{g}$ the primes above $p$. Then for any $i, j$ we have a $\sigma \in \operatorname{Gal}(L / K)$ such that $\sigma\left(P_{i}\right)=P_{j}$

Proof. It is clear that Gal is acting on $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ transporting prime ideals onto prime ideals. Now assume the statement of the lemma is wrong, then we can find $i \neq j$ such that

$$
\underbrace{\left\{\sigma\left(P_{i}\right) \mid \sigma \in \operatorname{Gal}(L / K)\right\}}_{=: A} \cap \underbrace{\left\{\sigma\left(P_{j}\right) \mid \sigma\right\}}_{=: B}=\emptyset
$$

The the CRT allows us to find $x \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $x \equiv 1 \bmod P_{a}, P_{a} \in A$ and $x \equiv 0 \bmod P_{b}$ for $P_{b} \in B$. But this implies $\sigma(x) \equiv 1 \bmod P_{i}$ for all $\sigma$, hence $N(x) \equiv 1 \bmod \cap_{\sigma} P_{i} \cap Z_{K}=p$ and $N(x) \equiv 0 \bmod \cap \sigma P_{j} \cap Z_{K}=p$ as well.

Definition 5.35: Let $\mathcal{O}_{1} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{2}$ be orders, then

$$
\mathcal{F}:=\left\{x \in \mathcal{O}_{2} \mid x \mathcal{O}_{2} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{1}\right\}
$$

is called the conductor of $\mathcal{O}_{1}$ in $\mathcal{O}_{2}$. For $\mathcal{O}_{2}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ we call $\mathcal{F}$ simply the conductor of $\mathcal{O}_{1}$.
Lemma 5.36: Let $\mathcal{O}_{1} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{2}$ be orders, and $\mathcal{F}$ the conductor, then $\mathcal{F}$ is an ideal in both $\mathcal{O}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{O}_{2}$. Furthermore, among all those ideal, $\mathcal{F}$ is maximal.

Proof. We note $\mathcal{O}_{1} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{2}$ and $1 \in \mathcal{O}_{2}$ as this give $\mathcal{F} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{1}$. For the maximality we note for any ideal $A \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{1}$ that is an ideal in $\mathcal{O}_{2}$ as well we have

$$
A \mathcal{O}_{2} \subseteq A \subseteq \mathcal{O}_{1}
$$

so $A \subseteq \mathcal{F}$.
Lemma 5.37: Let $\mathcal{F}$ be the conductor of $\mathcal{O}$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ and define

$$
\begin{aligned}
D_{L} & :=\left\{A \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L} \mid 0 \neq A, A+\mathcal{F}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}\right\} \\
D_{\mathcal{O}} & :=\{A \leq \mathcal{O} \mid 0 \neq A, A+\mathcal{F}=\mathcal{O}\}
\end{aligned}
$$

then
(1) $D_{L}$ and $D_{\mathcal{O}}$ are multiplicative monoids.
(2) For all $A \in D_{L}$ we have $\mathbb{Z}_{L} / A \sim \mathcal{O} / A$
(3) Every $A \in D_{\mathcal{O}}$ has a unique factorisation into prime ideals in $D_{\mathcal{O}}$
(4) $D_{L}$ and $D_{\mathcal{O}}$ have cancellation.

Proof. (1): Let $A, B \in D_{\mathcal{O}}$, then

$$
\mathcal{O}=\mathcal{O O}=(A+\mathcal{F})(B+\mathcal{F})=A B+\mathcal{F}(A+B+\mathcal{F})=A B+\mathcal{F}
$$

(2) Define $\varphi: D_{\mathcal{O}} \rightarrow D_{L}: A \mapsto A \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, then $\varphi$ is welldefined:

$$
\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathcal{O} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=(A+\mathcal{F}) \mathbb{Z}_{L}=A \mathbb{Z}_{L}+\mathcal{F} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\varphi(A)+\mathbb{Z}_{L}
$$

so $\varphi(A) \in D_{L}$. Clearly, $\varphi$ is multiplicative.
Next, we show that $\varphi$ is injective: Let $A, B \in D_{\mathcal{O}}$ with $\varphi(A)=\varphi(B)$. Since $\varphi(A) \in D_{L}$, we have $A \mathbb{Z}_{L}+\mathcal{F}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$, so $A \mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap \mathcal{F}=A \mathbb{Z}_{L} \mathcal{F}$. Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
A & \subseteq \varphi(A) \cap \mathcal{O}=A \mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap(A+\mathcal{F})=A+\left(A \mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap \mathcal{F}\right) \\
& =A+A \mathcal{F} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=A+A \mathcal{F}=A+A=A
\end{aligned}
$$

And the same for $B$. Now we can conclude

$$
A=\varphi(A) \cap \mathcal{O}=\varphi(B) \cap \mathcal{O}=B
$$

Finally surjectivity: Let $A \in D_{L}$ be arbitrary, then

$$
(A \cap \mathcal{O})+\mathcal{F}=(A \cap \mathcal{O})+(\mathcal{F} \cap \mathcal{O})=(A+\mathcal{F}) \cap \mathcal{O}=\mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap \mathcal{O}=\mathcal{O}
$$

showing $A \cap \mathcal{O} \in D_{\mathcal{O}}$. Since $A$ and $\mathcal{F}$ as well as $A \cap \mathcal{O}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ are comaximal, we have

$$
A \mathcal{F}=A \cap \mathcal{F}=(A \cap \mathcal{O}) \cap \mathcal{F}=(A \cap \mathcal{O}) \mathcal{F}
$$

and thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
A & =A \mathcal{O}=A(A \cap \operatorname{calO}+\mathcal{F})=A(A \cap \mathcal{O})+A \mathcal{F} \\
& =A(A \cap \mathcal{O})+\mathcal{F}(A \cap \mathcal{O})=(A \cap \mathcal{O})(A+\mathcal{F}) \\
& =(A \cap \mathcal{O}) \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\varphi(A \cap \mathcal{O})
\end{aligned}
$$

And $\varphi$ is surjective as required.
(3) Define $\psi: \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{L} / A: x \mapsto x+A$, then $\operatorname{ker} \psi=\mathcal{O} \cap A$. Let $x \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ be aritrary. Since $A+\mathcal{F}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$, we can find $y \in A$ and $z \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $x=y+z$, thus $\psi(z)=z+A=z+y+A=x+A$, hence $\psi$ is surjective. Since in orders, residue rings are finite, $\psi$ is also injective.
(4) Let $A \in D_{\mathcal{O}}$ be arbitrary, then $\varphi(A) \in D_{L}$ has a unique factorisation into prime ideals:

$$
\varphi(A)=A \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod P_{i}^{n_{i}}
$$

Since $\varphi(A) \subseteq P_{i}$ we also have $P_{i} \in D_{L}$, so

$$
A=\prod \varphi^{-1}\left(P_{i}\right)^{n_{i}}
$$

Since $\varphi$ is an isomorphism, the uniquness follows from $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$.

Theorem 5.38 (Dedekind): Let $\varphi \in L, L=K[\varphi], f \in \mathbb{Z}_{K}[t]$ the minimal polynomial of $\varphi$ and $\mathcal{F}$ the conductor of $\mathcal{O}:=\mathbb{Z}_{K}[\varphi]$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$.

Now let $P$ be a prime ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ such that $P \mathbb{Z}_{L}+\mathcal{F}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ and $(\overline{.}): \mathbb{Z}_{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{K} / P=$ $\mathbb{F}_{P}$ the canonical projection and the extension to the polynomial ring.

Assume $\bar{f}=\Pi \bar{f}_{i}^{e_{i}}$, then

$$
P \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod Q_{i}^{e_{i}}
$$

for prime ideals $Q_{i}=\left\langle P, f_{i}(\varphi)\right\rangle$ and $f\left(Q_{i} / P\right)=\operatorname{deg} f_{i}$.

Lemma 5.39: In the situation of 5.38 we define

$$
\Phi: \mathbb{Z}_{K}[\varphi] \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{P}[t] / \bar{f}: \varphi \mapsto t
$$

then

$$
\operatorname{ker} \Phi=P[\varphi]
$$

and

$$
\mathbb{Z}_{K}[\varphi] / P[\varphi]=\mathbb{F}_{P}[t] / \bar{f}
$$

Proof. Let $h[t] \in \operatorname{ker} \Phi$, then clearly $\bar{h}=\bar{q} \bar{f}$ for some $\bar{q} \in \mathbb{F}_{P}[t]$. Fixing (as usual) a monic lift, we write

$$
h=q f+p
$$

for $p[t] \in P[t]$, but then $h(\varphi)=\Phi(h)=p$, so $\operatorname{ker} \Phi \subseteq P[t]$. Since the reverse is obvious, this shows the claims.

Proof of 5.38 . By 5.39 we need to study the prime ideals in $\mathbb{F}_{P}[t] / \bar{f}$, but those are easy: primes in the quotient come from the $\bar{f}_{i}$, so $\left\langle P[\varphi], f_{i}(\varphi)\right\rangle$ are prime ideals in $\mathbb{Z}_{K}[\varphi] / P[\varphi]$. Define $Q_{i}$ as in the theorem

$$
Q_{i}:=\left\langle p, f_{i}(\varphi)\right\rangle=f_{i}(\varphi) \mathbb{Z}_{L}+P \mathbb{Z}_{L}
$$

By construction we also have $Q_{i} \in D_{L}$ since $P \subseteq Q_{I}$ and $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=P \mathbb{Z}_{L}+\mathcal{F} \subseteq Q_{I}+\mathcal{F} \subseteq$ $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$. By 5.37 the prime ideals in $D_{L}$ and $D_{\mathcal{O}}$ are in one-to-one correspondence. It remains to show the statements about the inertia and the ramification.

$$
\begin{aligned}
N(P)^{f\left(Q_{i} / P\right)} & =\left|\mathbb{Z}_{K} / P\right|^{f}=\left|\mathbb{Z}_{L} / Q_{i}\right|=N\left(Q_{i}\right) \\
& =\left|\mathcal{O} /\left(Q_{i} \cap \mathcal{O}\right)\right|=\left|(\mathcal{O} / P[\varphi]) /\left(\left(Q_{i} O\right) / P[\varphi]\right)\right| \\
& =\left|\left(\mathbb{F}_{P}[t] / \bar{f}\right) /\left(\bar{f}_{i} \mathbb{F}_{P}[t] / \bar{f}\right)\right| \\
& =\left|\mathbb{F}_{P}[t] / \bar{f}_{i}\right|=N(P)^{\operatorname{deg} f_{i}}
\end{aligned}
$$

For the ramification we start by showing $e_{i} \geq e\left(Q_{i} / P\right)$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\prod_{i=1}^{r} Q_{i}^{e_{i}} & =\prod\left(p \mathbb{Z}_{L}+f_{i}(\varphi) \mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)^{e_{i}} \subseteq p \mathbb{Z}_{L}+\prod f_{i}^{e_{i}}(\varphi) \mathbb{Z}_{L} \\
& \subseteq p \mathbb{Z}_{L}+p \mathbb{Z}_{K}[\varphi] \mathbb{Z}_{L} \subseteq p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod Q_{i}^{e\left(Q_{i}, P\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

On the other hand, simply counting:

$$
n=\sum e\left(Q_{i} / P\right) f\left(Q_{i} / P\right) \geq \sum e_{i} \operatorname{deg} f_{i}=\operatorname{deg} f=n
$$

hence equality everywhere and $e_{i}=e\left(Q_{i} / P\right)$
Corollary 5.40: Let $L=K[\varphi], \mathcal{O}:=\mathbb{Z}_{K}[\varphi], \mathcal{F}$ the conductor of $\mathcal{O}$ and $P \leq \mathbb{Z}_{K}$ a prime. Then if either

$$
\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathcal{O}\right) \nsubseteq P
$$

or

$$
d_{f} \notin P
$$

where $f \in \mathbb{Z}_{K}[t]$ is the monic minimal polynomial of $\varphi$, then

$$
P \mathbb{Z}_{L}+\mathcal{F}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}
$$

Proof. Since $d_{f} \in\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathcal{O}\right)$, (or $\left.\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathcal{O}\right) \mid d_{f}\right)$, the second implies the first, so it remains to show the first.

Let $\alpha \in \mathcal{F} \cap K$ such that $P+\alpha \mathbb{Z}_{K}=\mathbb{Z}_{K}$, then $P \mathbb{Z}_{L}+\mathcal{F}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ since

$$
\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathbb{Z}_{K} \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\left(P+\alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L}\right) \mathbb{Z}_{K}=P \mathbb{Z}_{K}+\alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L} \subseteq P \mathbb{Z}_{L}+\mathcal{F}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}
$$

implying equality everywhere. So we have $\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}_{K}[\varphi]\right) \subseteq \mathcal{F}$, basically by definition showing the statement.

Corollary 5.41: Let $L=K[\varphi]$ for $\varphi \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}, f \in \mathbb{Z}_{K}[t]$ the minimal polynomial and $P \subseteq \mathbb{Z}_{K}$ a prime such that $d_{f} \notin P$. Then $P$ is unramified.

Proof. $d_{f} \notin P$ implies that 5.38 can be used. $P$ unramified is now equivalent to $\bar{f}$ being squarefree, but this is guaranteed by $d_{f} \notin P$ or $d_{\bar{f}} \neq 0$.

We now want to do two things:

- Study the reverse, i. e. show that ramified primes are exactly those dividing $d_{L}$ (for $K=\mathbb{Q}$ at least) and
- show that 5.38 does not always apply.

We start with an explicit example (slightly cheated)
Example 5.42: Let $f:=t^{3}+t^{2}-2 t+8$. This is irreducible modulo 3, so it is irreducible. Running all our algorithms, we get

$$
\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathbb{Z}+\mathbb{Z} \varphi+\mathbb{Z} \frac{1}{2}\left(\varphi^{2}+\varphi\right)
$$

so $\mathbb{Z}[\varphi]$ is not maximal. Let $\varphi_{i}: \mathbb{Z}_{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{2}$ be defined via

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varphi_{1}\left(\left(\omega_{i}\right)_{i}\right)=(1,0,0) \\
& \varphi_{2}\left(\left(\omega_{i}\right)_{i}\right)=(1,0,1) \\
& \varphi_{3}\left(\left(\omega_{i}\right)_{i}\right)=(1,1,1)
\end{aligned}
$$

It's a bit painful (by hand), but we can easily check that those three maps are ring homomorphisms. Since they are trivially surjective, we have three distinct prime ideals as their kernels. Hence

$$
2 \mathbb{Z}_{L}=P_{1} P_{2} P_{3}
$$

Suppose, we had some $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $\mathbb{Z}[\alpha]$ would be 2-maximal. Then we could apply 5.38 to obtain the factorisation of $2 \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ via the factorisation of the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$. However, there are only 2 distinct linear polynomials over $\mathbb{F}_{2}$ available, hence the modulo 2 factorisation can never be squaree free.

It follows that for every $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ that is primitive, we have $2 \mid\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \operatorname{disc}(\alpha)\right)$.
So we need a different method to factorise primes as well.

We would like to study this failure of 5.38 in slightly more generality.
Lemma 5.43: Let $L / \mathbb{Q}$ a number field, $p \in \mathbb{Z}$ a prime number and $\theta \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Then
(1) $p X\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}[\theta]\right)$ iff for all $\varphi \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ we have

$$
\varphi(\theta) \in p \mathbb{Z}_{L} \Longleftrightarrow \varphi \in p \mathbb{Z}[t]
$$

(2) Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ be such that $\alpha-\theta \in p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, then

$$
p\left|\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}[\alpha]\right) \Longleftrightarrow p\right|\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}[\theta]\right)
$$

Proof. (1) If $\varphi \in p \mathbb{Z}[t]$, then clearly $\varphi(\theta) \in p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ as well. If $p \mid\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}[\theta]\right)$, then we can find $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L} \backslash \mathbb{Z}[\theta]$ such that $p \alpha \in \mathbb{Z}[\theta]$. Clearly, $p \alpha=\varphi(\theta)$ for some suitable $\varphi \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ and $\varphi \notin p \mathbb{Z}[t]$ since $\alpha \notin \mathbb{Z}[\theta]$.

If $p \Lambda\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}[\theta]\right)$ and $\varphi(\theta) \in p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Then $\varphi(\theta)=\sum p t_{i} \omega_{i}$ for some basis of $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ equivalently, $\varphi(\theta) \equiv 0 \bmod p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Since the base change from $\left(\omega_{i}\right)_{i}$ to $\left(\theta^{i-1}\right)_{i}$ involves a transformation matrix $T \in \mathbb{Z}^{n \times n}$ that is invertable modulo $p$, the statement follows.
(2) From $\alpha-\theta \in p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ we immediately get $\varphi(\alpha)-\varphi(\theta) \in p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ as well, hence the statement follows from (1).

Lemma 5.44: Let $p$ be a prime number, $P \subseteq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ a prime ideal above $p$. Then $\mathbb{F}_{P}$ is a finite field. Let $\bar{\alpha} \in \mathbb{F}_{P}$ be a primitive element for $\mathbb{F}_{P}$ over $\mathbb{F}_{p}, \bar{g} \in \mathbb{F}_{p}[t]$ the minimal polynomial of $\bar{\alpha}$ and $g \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ a monic lift. If $P^{2} \mid p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, then we can find $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $g(\beta) \in P \backslash P^{2}$

Proof. Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ be a any lift of $\alpha$. If $g(\alpha) \notin P^{2}$ we're done. Otherwise fix any $\pi \in P \backslash P^{2}$ and show that $g(\alpha+\pi)$ works: Taylor's theorem:

$$
g(\alpha+\pi)=g(\alpha)+\pi g^{\prime}(\alpha)+\pi^{2} \ldots
$$

Since $\bar{g}$ is irredicible, $\bar{\alpha}$ is only a single root of $\bar{g}$, hence $\bar{g}^{\prime}(\bar{\alpha}) \neq 0$, so $\pi g^{\prime}(\alpha) \in P \backslash P^{2}$, $g(\alpha)$ and the other terms are in $P^{2}$.

Lemma 5.45: Let $\beta, P$ and $g$ as in 5.44. Then for $1 \leq i \leq e(P / p)$ we have for $\varphi \in \mathbb{Z}[t], \operatorname{deg} \varphi<n$ :

$$
\varphi(\beta) \in P^{i} \Longleftrightarrow(\bar{g})^{i} \mid \bar{\varphi}
$$

Proof. $\varphi(\beta) \in P$ is equivalent to $\bar{\varphi}(\bar{\beta})=0$, hence $\bar{g} \mid \bar{\varphi}$. Let now $\bar{\varphi}=(\bar{g})^{k} \bar{h}$ for some $\bar{h} \in \mathbb{F}_{p}[t]$ coprime to $\bar{g}$. But then the same argument shows that $h(\beta) \notin P$, hence $\varphi(\beta) \in P^{k} \backslash P^{k+1}$ giving $k \geq i$ as claimed.
Theorem 5.46 (Dedekind): Let $p \in \mathbb{Z}$ be a prime number and $L / \mathbb{Q}$ a number field. Assume that

$$
p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod P_{i}^{e_{i}}
$$

and there exists pairwise coprime irreducible polynomials $f_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{p}[t]$ of degree deg $f_{i}=$ $f\left(Q_{i} / p\right)$. Then we can find $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that

$$
p X\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}[\alpha]\right)
$$

So this is a reverse of the example, classifying completely when 5.38 might be applicable.

Proof. Since $f_{i}$ is irreducible of degree $f\left(Q_{i} / p\right), f_{i}$ has a root in $\mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}$ which is primitive over $\mathbb{F}_{p}$. By 5.44 we can find $\beta_{i}$ such that $f_{i}\left(\beta_{i}\right) \in Q_{i} \backslash Q_{i}^{2}$. Using the CRT we find $\beta \equiv \beta_{i} \bmod Q_{i}^{2}$.
Suppose $\varphi(\beta) \equiv 0 \bmod p$, then $\varphi(\beta) \equiv 0 \bmod Q_{i}^{e_{i}}$ by the CRT, so 5.45 implies $\bar{\varphi} \equiv 0 \bmod f_{i}^{e_{i}}$, so CRT again, $\bar{\varphi} \equiv 0 \bmod \prod f_{i}^{e_{i}}$. For degree reasons then $\bar{\varphi}=0$ and hence $\varphi \equiv 0 \bmod p$. By 5.43, $p \chi\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}[\beta]\right)$.

Lemma 5.47: Let $p$ be a prime ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_{K}$ and $p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod_{i=1}^{r} Q_{i}^{e_{i}}$. Choose $\beta_{i, j} \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, $1 \leq j \leq f_{i}=f\left(Q_{i} \mid p\right)$ such that $\left(\bar{\beta}_{i, j}\right)_{j}$ form a $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-basis for $\mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}=\mathbb{Z}_{L} / Q_{i}$ and

$$
\alpha_{i, j} \in\left(Q_{i}^{j-1} \backslash Q_{i}^{j}\right) \cap \bigcap_{k \neq i} Q_{k}^{e_{k}}
$$

for $1 \leq j \leq e_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq r$. Then the $n$-elements $\alpha_{i, j} \beta_{i, k} 1 \leq i \leq r, 1 \leq j \leq e_{i}$ and $1 \leq k \leq f_{i}$ form a $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-basis for $\mathbb{Z}_{L} / p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$.

Proof. Since $N\left(p \mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)=N(p)^{n}$, hence $\mathbb{Z}_{L} / p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-vectorspace of dimension $n$, it is sufficient to show that the elements are $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-linear independent. Assume now that we have $\gamma_{i, j, k} \in \mathbb{Z}_{K}$ such that

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{j=1}^{e_{i}} \sum_{k=1}^{f_{i}} \gamma_{i, j, k} \alpha_{i, j} \beta_{i, k} \in p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod Q_{i}^{e_{i}}
$$

Since $\alpha_{i, j} \in Q_{l}^{e_{l}}$ for all $l \neq i$, we see that

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{e_{i}} \sum_{k=1}^{f_{i}} \gamma_{i, j, k} \alpha i, j \beta_{i, k} \in Q_{i}^{e_{i}}
$$

thus

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{l}\left(\alpha_{i, l} \sum_{k=1}^{f_{i}} \gamma_{i, j, k} \beta_{i, k}\right) \in Q_{i}^{l}
$$

as well. (The full sum has to be in $Q_{i}^{e_{i}}$, but by construction, the $\alpha_{i, l} \notin Q_{i}^{l}$ ). We now fix some $1 \leq i \leq r$ and show by induction over $l$ that $\gamma_{i, l, k} \in p$. From the last line and since $\alpha_{i, 1} \notin Q_{i}$, we see that

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{f_{i}} \gamma_{i, 1, k} \beta_{i, k} \in Q_{i}
$$

thus $\gamma_{i, 1, k} \in p$ since $\beta_{i}$ form a $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-basis for $\mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}$. This starts the induction. Now let $l>1$ then

$$
\underbrace{\sum_{j=1}^{l-1} \sum_{k=1}^{f_{i}} \gamma_{i, j, k} \alpha_{i, j} \beta_{i, k}}_{\in p \mathbb{Z}_{L} \subseteq Q_{i}^{l}}+\alpha_{i, l} \sum_{k=1}^{f_{i}} \gamma_{i, l, k} \beta_{i, k} \in Q_{i}^{l}
$$

The choice of $\alpha_{i, l}$ now implies

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{f_{i}} \gamma_{i, j, k} \beta_{i, k} \in Q_{i}
$$

hence, as above $\gamma_{i, l, k} \in p$.
Remark 5.48: Let $K=\mathbb{Q}, p \in \mathbb{Z}$ a prime number and $\alpha_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ a $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-basis for $\mathbb{Z}_{L} / p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Then clearly the $\alpha_{i}$ are $\mathbb{Q}$-linear independent.

Lemma 5.49: Let $K, p, \alpha_{i}$ as above and $R:=\sum \mathbb{Z} \alpha_{i}$. Then $p \nmid\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: R\right)$.
Note: $R$ will, in general, not be an order!
Proof. Assume $p \mid\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: R\right)$, then we can find $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}_{L} \backslash R$ and $p \beta \in R$, hence

$$
p \beta=\sum m_{i} \alpha_{i}
$$

for $m_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$. Since $\beta \notin R$, we find $i$ such that $m_{i} \not \equiv 0 \bmod p$, thus

$$
p \beta=\sum m_{i} \alpha_{i} \equiv 0 \bmod p \mathbb{Z}_{L}
$$

is a non-trivial rep. of 0 .
Lemma 5.50: Let $K=\mathbb{Q}, P=p \mathbb{Z}$ for a prime number and $\left(\gamma_{i}\right)_{i}=\left(\alpha_{i, j} \beta_{i, k}\right)_{i, j, k}$ the elements form 5.47. For

$$
\nu:=\sum_{i=1}^{r}\left(e_{i}-1\right) f_{i}=n-\sum f_{i}
$$

we have $p^{\nu} \mid \operatorname{disc}\left(\left(\gamma_{i}\right)_{i}\right)$
Proof. Wlog: $\nu>0$ (since for $\nu=0$ the statement is trivial.) Let now $\mathbb{Z}_{L} \ni \gamma=$ $\alpha_{i, j} \beta_{i, k}$ for $j>1$, then $\gamma \in \cap Q_{i}$. For $M$ the normal closure of $L / K$ and $R \leq \mathbb{Z}_{M}$ a prime ideal containing $p$, we have $p \mathbb{Z}_{M}=\Pi Q_{i}^{e_{i}} \mathbb{Z}_{M}$, hence we can find $1 \leq l \leq r$ such that $Q_{l} \subseteq R$, thus $\gamma \in R$. For $\varphi$ a $\mathbb{Q}$-automorphism of $M, \varphi(R)$ is also a prime ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_{M}$ containing $p$, hence we can find $\tilde{l}$ such that $Q_{\tilde{l}} \subseteq \varphi(R)$, so $\gamma \in Q_{\tilde{l}} \subseteq \varphi(R)$, hence $\varphi^{-1}(\gamma) \in R$ for all such $\varphi$. As before, this shows that $\operatorname{Tr}(\gamma \alpha) \in R \cap \mathbb{Z}$ for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$. From $\#\left\{\alpha_{i, j} \beta_{i, k} \mid j \geq 2\right\}=\nu$ we get the claim, since the trace-matrix $\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\gamma_{i} \gamma_{j}\right)\right)_{i, j}$ will have at least $\nu$ rows with all entries divisible by $p$.

Corollary 5.51: Under the assumptions of 5.50 we get $p^{\nu} \mid \operatorname{disc} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ or, in other words: every ramified prime divides the discriminant.

Proof. Let $\gamma_{i}$ be as above and set $R=\sum \mathbb{Z} \gamma_{i}$. Then by $5.48 R$ is a $\mathbb{Z}$-module of full rank and $p \nmid\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: R\right)$. By 5.50 we get $p^{\nu} \mid \operatorname{disc}(R)$ thus $p^{\nu} \mid \operatorname{disc} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ as well.

Lemma 5.52: Let $K=\mathbb{Q}, p \in \mathbb{Z}$ an unramified prime, then $p \nmid \operatorname{disc} \mathbb{Z}_{L}$.
Proof. Let $p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod_{i=1}^{r} Q_{i}^{e_{i}}$ and $\alpha_{i, j}, \beta_{i, k}$ as in 5.47. Then, by construction $\gamma:=$ $\alpha_{i, j} \alpha_{i, j} \in p \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ for all $i \neq \tilde{i}$, hence $\operatorname{Tr}(\gamma \alpha) \equiv 0 \bmod p$ for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$. This shows that the trace matrix modulo $p$ is of the form $\operatorname{diag}\left(\left(\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha_{i, j} \beta_{i, k} \alpha_{i, j} \beta_{i, \tilde{k}}\right)_{j, k, \tilde{j}, \tilde{k}}\right)_{i}\right)\right)$ under suitable ordering of the basis elements. We also remark that $j=1$ here as $p$ is unramified. This shows $\operatorname{disc} R \equiv \Pi \operatorname{det}\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha_{i, 1} \beta_{i, k} \alpha_{i, 1} \beta_{i, \tilde{k}}\right)_{k, \tilde{k}}\right) \bmod p$. It remains to be shows, that the smaller determinants are non-zero. Fix a normal closure $M$ of $L$ and the embeddings $\varphi_{\mu}: L \rightarrow M 1 \leq \mu \leq n$. Now we fix some $i$ and choose $R$ a prime ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_{M}$ above $Q_{i}$, then $\mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}} \subseteq \mathbb{F}_{R}$. Let $\pi: \mathbb{Z}_{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{R}$. Let

$$
A_{i}:=\operatorname{diag}\left(\varphi_{1}\left(\alpha_{i, 1}\right), \ldots, \varphi_{n}\left(\alpha_{i, 1}\right)\right)\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\varphi_{1}\left(\beta_{i, 1}\right) & \ldots & \varphi_{1}\left(\beta_{i, f_{i}}\right) \\
\vdots & & \vdots \\
\varphi_{n}\left(\beta_{i, 1}\right) & \ldots & \varphi_{n}\left(\beta_{i, f_{i}}\right)
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $A_{i}^{t} A_{i}=\left(\operatorname{Tr}\left(\alpha_{i, 1} \beta_{i, k} \alpha_{i, 1} \beta_{i, \tilde{k}}\right)_{k, \tilde{k}}\right)$ and it remains to show that $\operatorname{rg}_{\mathbb{F}_{p}} \pi\left(A_{i}\right)=f_{i}$ since then the determinant is non-zero in $\mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}$. Since the determinant is automatically in $\mathbb{F}_{p}$ it will imply that the determinants are not divisible by $p$. Now we note that
the $\beta_{i, 1}, \ldots, \beta_{i, f_{i}}$ for a $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-basis for $\mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}$ hence are $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-linear independent. Applying the Vandermonde determinant to a defining polynomial for $\mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}$ we see that the Vandermonde matrix has full rank $f_{i}$, hence $A_{i}$ has $f_{i}$ independent rows. Scaling with the diagonal matrix does not change this as all entries there are invertible since $\alpha_{i, 1} \notin Q_{i}$. Lastly, $\operatorname{rg} A^{t} A=\operatorname{rg} A$ in general.

## CHAPTER 6

## Computing the Class Group

## 1. The Beginning

Now it s about time to compute class groups. This time, we actually start with an algorithm and then worry about the details.

## Algorithm 6.1:

Input: A number field $L$
Output: The class group $\mathrm{Cl}_{L}$
1: Find a finite set $B \subset I_{L}$ such that $\left\langle B+P_{L}\right\rangle=\mathrm{Cl}_{L}$
2: Find enough elements $\alpha_{i} \in L^{*}$ such that $\alpha_{i} \mathbb{Z}_{L} \in\langle B\rangle$
3: $\mathrm{Cl}_{L}=\langle B\rangle /\left\langle\alpha_{i} \mathbb{Z}_{L} \mid i\right\rangle$
The correctness comes directly out of the map

$$
\langle B\rangle \rightarrow \mathrm{Cl}: A \mapsto A+P_{L}
$$

By definition, the kernel of the map consists exactly of those elements $\alpha_{i}$ found in step 2.

However, the algorithm needs some improvement. The only obvious step so far is (1): Defining $B$ from the Minkowski bound will result in such a finite set and we know how to find (most) prime ideals. The rest needs some work, although this is already sufficient to find some class groups:
Example 6.2: Let $L=\mathbb{Q}(i \sqrt{5})=\mathbb{Q}[t] / t^{2}+5$. Then $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathbb{Z}[t] / t^{2}+5$. The Minkowski constant is computed as $\sqrt{-D}(4 / \pi) 2!/ 4=2.85$ from $D=-20$, thus the class group is generated by ideals of norm $\leq 2$. Splitting $2 \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ using Dedekind, gives $t^{2}+5 \equiv t^{2}+1=(t+1)^{2} \bmod 2$, hence $2 \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\langle 2,1+i \sqrt{5}\rangle^{2}$, so $B$ has only 2 elements.
Now we need to see if $P_{2}:=\langle 2,1+i \sqrt{5}\rangle$ is principal. If $P_{2}=\langle\alpha\rangle$, then clearly $|N(\alpha)|=N\left(P_{2}\right)=2$.

$$
N(x+i y \sqrt{5})=x^{2}+5 y^{2}=2
$$

has no solution, hence $P_{2}$ is non-principal, so $\mathrm{Cl}_{L}=\mathbb{Z} / 2 \mathbb{Z}$
Example 6.3: Let $L=\mathbb{Q}(i \sqrt{14})=\mathbb{Q}[t] / t^{2}+14$. Then $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathbb{Z}[t] / t^{2}+14$. The Minkowski constant is computed as $\sqrt{-D}(4 / \pi) 2!/ 4=4.76$ from $D=-56$, thus the class group is generated by ideals of norm $\leq 4$. Splitting $2 \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ using Dedekind, gives $t^{2}+14 \equiv t^{2}=t^{2} \bmod 2$, hence $2 \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\langle 2, i \sqrt{14}\rangle^{2}=: P_{2}^{2}$, and $t^{2}+14 \equiv t^{2}+2=$ $(t+1)(t+2) \bmod 3,3 \mathbb{Z}_{L}=P_{3,1} P_{3,2}:=\langle 3,1+i \sqrt{14}\rangle\langle 3,2+i \sqrt{14}\rangle$. so $B$ has 4 elements.

Looking for small norm elements:

$$
N(x+i y \sqrt{14})=x^{2}+14 y^{2}
$$

we wee that there are no elements of norm 2 or 3 , hence $P_{2}, P_{3,1}$ and $P_{3,2}$ are nonprincipal. We also know that $P_{2}$ has order 2 (since $P_{2}^{2}=\langle 2\rangle$ is clearly principal) and that $P_{3,1} P_{3,2}=\langle 3\rangle$. At this point, we could have $\mathrm{Cl}_{L} \in\left\{C_{2}, C_{2} \times C_{2}, C_{4}\right\}$. Thus we need to see if $P_{3,1}^{2}$ is principal. However, the only elements of norm 9 are $\pm 3$ which have the wrong decomposition (i. e. there is no element $\alpha$ such that $N(\alpha)=9$ and $\langle\alpha\rangle=P_{3,1}^{2}$.

Clearly, the "same" idea allows us to compute class groups of all imaginary quadratic fields - albeit with a lot of work.

Example 6.4: Let $L=\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{10})=\mathbb{Q}[t] / t^{2}-10$. Then $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathbb{Z}[t] / t^{2}-10$. The Minkowski constant here turns out to be 3.16, so we need to look at ideals of norm $\leq 3$. As above

$$
t^{2}-10 \equiv t^{2} \bmod 2 \text { and } t^{2}-10 \equiv t^{2}+2=(t+1)(t+2) \bmod 3
$$

so we have 4 ideals: $\left\{1 \mathbb{Z}_{L}, P_{2}, P_{3,1}, P_{3,2}\right\}$ and need to test them for being principal. $N(x+y \sqrt{10})=x^{2}-10 y^{2}$ and we cannot simply search for small solutions. We can easily find $N(2-\sqrt{10})=-6$, so $\langle 2-\sqrt{10}\rangle=P_{2} P_{3, i}$ for $i \in\{1,2\}$. Applying the automorphism $\sqrt{10} \mapsto-\sqrt{10}$ we see that $P_{2} \cong P_{3, i}$ for both $i=1,2$, so the class group is at most $C_{2}$. Now checking modulo 5 we get $x^{2}-10 y^{2} \equiv x^{2}= \pm 2 \bmod 5$ which does not work since $1^{2}=1,2^{2}=4,3^{2}=4$ and $4^{2}=1 \bmod 5$. So the class group is indeed $C_{2}$.

The last example shows that we need a more sophisticated approach. Finding suitable "relations" is fine, but how can we proof non-existence?

In order to simplify the discussion, we introduce more notation:
For $\alpha \in L^{*}$ and $P$ a prime ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ there is a unique $v_{P}(\alpha)$ such that $P^{v_{P}(\alpha)} \| \alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ or, equivalently $\alpha \in P^{v_{P}(\alpha)} \backslash P^{v_{P}(\alpha)+1}$. We can extend $v_{P}$ to all of $L^{*}$ simply by setting $v_{P}(\alpha / \beta)=v_{P}(\alpha)-v_{P}(\beta)$. The unique ideal factorisation makes this work.

Example 6.5: Let $L=\mathbb{Q}$, thus $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathbb{Z}$ and fix $p \in \mathbb{Z}$ a prime number. Writing $r / s \in \mathbb{Q}$ as $p^{l} \tilde{r} / \tilde{s}$ with $p \nmid \tilde{r}, p \nmid \tilde{s}$ we get $v_{p}(r / s)=l$.
$v_{2}(3 / 2)=-1, v_{2}(12 / 191)=2$.
Lemma 6.6: Let $P$ and $v_{P}$ as above, then
(1) $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, then $v_{P}(\alpha) \geq 0$
(2) $v_{P}(\alpha \beta)=v_{P}(\alpha) v_{P}(\beta)$
(3) $v_{P}(\alpha+\beta) \geq \min \left(v_{P}(\alpha), v_{P}(\beta)\right)$, in fact if $v_{P}(\alpha) \neq v_{P}(\beta)$, then $v_{P}(\alpha+\beta)=$ $\min \left(v_{P}(\alpha), v_{P}(\beta)\right)$

Proof. Follows directly from the ideal properties.

Using the Dedekind property, we also extend the $v_{P}$ to all non-zero ideals of $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Finally, to simplify some discussions, $v_{P}(0):=\infty$. The map $v_{P}$ is called $P$-adic valuation.
Definition 6.7: Let $S \subset I_{L}$ be a set of prime ideals of $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
I_{S}:=\langle S\rangle \\
\mathbb{Z}_{L, S}:=\left\{x \in L^{*} \mid v_{P}(x) \geq 0 \text { for } P \notin S\right\}
\end{gathered}
$$

the so called $S$-integers and

$$
U_{S}:=\left\{\alpha \in L^{*} \mid \alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L} \in\langle S\rangle\right\}
$$

the set of $S$-units.
From the lemma it is clear that $\mathbb{Z}_{L, S}$ is a ring and that $U_{S}=\mathbb{Z}_{L, S}^{*}$. In particular $S=\{ \}$ gives $\mathbb{Z}_{L,\{ \}}=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$.
Example 6.8: In $\mathbb{Z}$ and $S:=\mathbb{P} \backslash\{p\}$ we have $\mathbb{Z}_{S}=\{r / s \mid p \nmid s\}=\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ the localisation of $\mathbb{Z}$ at $p$. Here, $\mathbb{Z}_{S}^{*}=\langle p\rangle$.

It can be shown that $\mathbb{Z}_{L, S}$ is again Dedekind, however, we're not using this here. $\left(\mathbb{P}_{L}=\left\{P \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L} \mid P\right.\right.$ is prime ideal $\}$ )
Lemma 6.9: Let $p \in \mathbb{Z}$ be a prime, $p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\prod Q_{i}^{e_{i}}$. Then there exists $\alpha_{i} \in L^{*}$ such that
(1) $v_{Q_{i}}\left(\alpha_{i}\right)=-1$
(2) $v_{Q_{j}}\left(\alpha_{i}\right)=0$ for all $i \neq j$
(3) $p \alpha_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$

We will call $\alpha_{i}$ an valuation element for $Q_{i}$.
Proof. Let $\pi_{i} \in Q_{i} \backslash Q_{i}^{2}$ and use CRT to find $\beta_{i} \equiv \pi_{j}^{e_{j}} \bmod Q_{j}^{e_{j}+1}$ and $\beta_{i} \equiv$ $\pi_{i}^{e_{i}-1} \bmod Q_{i}^{e_{i}}$. Then $\alpha_{i}:=\beta_{i} / p$ has all the required properties.

We can use the same idea as the proof above to show the following:
Corollary 6.10 (Weak Approximation): Let $S \subset \mathbb{P}_{L}$ be finite and fix $v_{s} \in \mathbb{Z}$ for all $s \in S$. Then we can find $\alpha \in L^{*}$ such that $v_{s}(\alpha)=v_{s}$ for all $s \in S$ and $v_{P}(\alpha) \geq 0$ for all $P \in \mathbb{P}_{L} \backslash S$.

Proof. We start by extending $S$ : Let $T:=\left\{Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L} \mid \exists P \in S: Q \cap \mathbb{Z}=P \cap \mathbb{Z}\right\}$ and setting $v_{s}=0$ for all $s \in T \backslash S$. Next $d:=\prod_{p \in\left\{p \mid \exists Q \in T: v_{Q}<0, p \in Q\right\}} p^{v_{Q}}$. Finally, using CRT to find $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $v_{Q}(\beta)=v_{Q}+v_{Q}(d)$ for all $Q \in T$. Then $\beta / d$ works.

We will use the valuation elements to compute valuations:

## Algorithm 6.11:

Input: $0 \neq \alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}, P \in \mathbb{P}_{L}$
Output: $v_{P}(\alpha)$
1: Let $\beta$ be an valuation element to $P$.
2: $i:=-1$
3: while $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ do

```
4: }\quad\alpha:=\alpha
```

5: $\quad i:=i+1$
6: return $i$
The correctness is clear - once we look at the valuations of elements. The algorithm also extends to ideals, either by working with generators or with ideals directly. It is also easy to extend this to fractional elements.

This algorithm is bad if the valuation is large:
(1) We need $v_{P}$ iterations of the loop
(2) Since, in general, $\beta$ has positive valuation at various other prime ideals, the norm of $\alpha$ as well as the coefficients, will grow.
Example 6.12: Let $L:=\mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{10}]$ and $P=P_{2}=\langle 2, \sqrt{10}\rangle$. Then $5 / \sqrt{10}$ is a valuation element, since $N(5 \sqrt{10})=-5 / 2$. Computing The valuation of $\alpha=2^{d}$ this way results, in the last iteration, in $\alpha=5^{d}$ which is much larger than $2^{d}$.

For completeness $t^{2}-10 \equiv t^{2} \bmod 5$, hence $5 \mathbb{Z}_{L}=P_{5}^{2}:=\langle 5, \sqrt{10}\rangle^{2}$.

## 2. More on Ideals

So far we've represented ideals in term of (HNF) $\mathbb{Z}$-bases. Using those we sketched algorithms for addition, multiplication, divison (inversion) and possibly intersection.

We also saw that every ideal in the maximal order can be generated by just 2 elements. Now we want to investigate this further since

- Conceptually, storing only 2 elements is cheaper than storing $n$
- Some operations are much more efficient on 2 elements
- (Most) prime ideals come naturally with 2 elements


## Algorithm 6.13:

Input: An integral ideal $A \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ and $0 \neq \alpha \in A$
Output: Element $\beta \in A$ such that $A=\langle\alpha, \beta\rangle$
1: repeat
2: $\quad \beta:=\operatorname{Random}(A)$
3: until $A=\langle\alpha, \beta\rangle$
It is clear that this algorithism is correct, sooner or later it will find a suitable 2nd generator. However, as stated it is actually not an algorithms at all as we cannot find random elements in $A$ - an infinite set. In order to obtain a more realisitc algorithm we change the specifications:
Algorithm 6.14 (2-Element Presentation for Ideals):
Input: An integral ideal $A \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ given via a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis $\left(\alpha_{i}\right)_{i}$ and $0 \neq a \in A \cap \mathbb{Z}$
Output: Element $\beta \in A$ such that $A=\langle a, \beta\rangle$
1: repeat
2: $\quad \beta:=\operatorname{Random}(A / a A)$
3: until $A=\langle a, \beta\rangle$

Here $a$ will usyally be the minimum $a=\min A \cap \mathbb{N}($ thus $\langle a\rangle=A \cap \mathbb{Z})$ or the norm $a=N(A)=\left|Z_{L} / A\right|$ both of which are readily available if the basis is in HNF. Since $A / a A$ is a finite ring, in fact $A / a A \equiv(\mathbb{Z} / a \mathbb{Z})^{n}$ via the ideal basis, we can easily pick $\beta$ uniformly at random.
Lemma 6.15: Let $\bar{\beta} \in A / a A$ be choosen uniformly at random and $\beta$ any lift of it in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Then the probability that $A=\langle a, \beta\rangle$ is at least

$$
\prod_{P \mid a}\left(1-\frac{1}{N(P)}\right)
$$

Proof. We have $A=\Pi Q^{v_{Q}(A)}$ and $a A \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\Pi Q^{v_{Q}(a)+v_{Q}(A)}$, thus by the CRT,

$$
A / a A=\oplus Q^{v_{Q}(a)} / Q^{v_{Q}(a)+v_{Q}(A)}=\oplus \mathbb{Z}_{L} / Q^{v_{Q}(a)}
$$

Now

$$
\langle a, \beta\rangle=\operatorname{gcd}\left(a \mathbb{Z}_{L}, \beta \mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)
$$

and thus $v_{Q}(\langle a, \beta\rangle)=\min \left(v_{Q}(a), v_{Q}(\beta)\right)$, hence $A=\langle a, \beta\rangle$ iff the valuations match. Hence

$$
\{\beta \in A / a A \mid A=\langle a, \beta\rangle\} \supseteq\left\{\beta \in A / a A \mid v_{Q}(\beta)=v_{Q}(A) \text { for all } Q \mid a\right\}
$$

From the CRT we now get

$$
\mid\left\{\beta \in A / a A \mid v_{Q}(\beta)=v_{Q}(A) \text { for all } Q \mid a\right\}|=|\left\{\beta \in \mathbb{Z}_{L} / a \mid v_{Q}(\beta)=0 \text { for all } Q \mid a\right\} \mid
$$

Since $v_{Q}(\beta)=0$ iff $\beta \notin Q$ we can now count $\left|\mathbb{Z}_{L} / Q^{e}\right|=N(Q)^{e}$ and $\mid\left\{x \in \mathbb{Z}_{L} / Q^{e} \mid x \in\right.$ $Q \mid=N(Q)^{e-1}$, hence $P\left(\beta \in \mathbb{Z}_{L} / Q^{e} \mid \beta \in Q\right)=1 / N(Q)$ and the statement follows.

Remark 6.16: Assume 2 is totally split in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ and $a=2$, then the above probability is sharp. In this case, the algorithm is not going to be very successul $\Pi(1-1 / N(Q))=2^{-n}$ in this case.

On the other hand, if $a$ contains no small prime ideals then this shows that the algorithm will find a second generator after very few attempts.

Apart from the situation where the random selection does not work (well), it is rather expensive to test $A=\langle a, \beta\rangle$ as this requires a full HNF computation. This partly motivates a variation of the 2-element presentation.
Definition 6.17: For $a \in \mathbb{N}$, define $P(a):=\left\{P \in \mathbb{P}_{L} \mid a \in P\right\}$. Similarly for $S \subseteq \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{Z}}$, define $P(S):=P_{L}:=\left\{Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L} \mid Q \cap P \neq \emptyset\right\}$. Let $A$ be a (fractional) ideal for $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$, then the support of $A$ is defined as

$$
\operatorname{supp}(A):=\left\{P \in \mathbb{P}_{L} \mid v_{P}(A) \neq 0\right\}
$$

Fix a finite set $S \subseteq \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ of prime numbers. A tuple $(a, \alpha) \in \mathbb{N} \times L$ is called a $S$-normal presentation of an ideal $A$ iff
(1) For all $Q \in P(S)$ we have $v_{Q}(a) \geq v_{Q}(A)$ and $v_{Q}(\alpha)=v_{Q}(A)$
(2) For $Q \notin P(S)$ we have $v_{Q}(a)=0$

Lemma 6.18: Let $S$ be a finite set of primes, $A$ some ideal and ( $a, \alpha$ ) a $S$-normal presentation for $A$. Then
(1) If $\operatorname{supp}(A) \subseteq P(S)$, then $A=\langle a, \alpha\rangle$
(2) If $A=\langle a, \alpha\rangle$ then $N(A)=\operatorname{gcd}\left(a^{n}, N(\alpha)\right)$

Proof. Part (1) is trivial and part (2) is homework
Remark 6.19: Let $p$ be a prime number and $p \in Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L}$. Then a second generator of a $P(p)$-normal presentation for $Q^{-1}$ yields a valuation element.

Lemma 6.20: Let $A \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ be integral, $P(N(A)) \subseteq S$, then there exists a $S$-normal presentation, i. e. we can find $a, \alpha$ such that $(a, \alpha)$ is $S$-normal for $A$.

Proof. Let $0 \neq a \in A \cap \mathbb{N}$, this satisfies all constraints on the 1st generator. The definition of $S$-normal presentation now imposes a finite number of conditions (valuations) at the primes in $P(S)$, so the approximation theorem 6.10 will find suitable $\alpha$.

The problem with this existence proof (as it is with the definition itself) is that we require the prime ideals in $P_{L}$ explicitly for the tests. In the lemma, we saw that the 1 st generator is easy to pick as $\min A \cap \mathbb{N}$ or any multiple. What we need is a way to check the 2 nd generator more efficiently.

Theorem 6.21: Let $0 \neq a \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Then $(a, \alpha)$ is $P(a)$-normal for $A:=\langle a, \alpha\rangle$ iff

$$
\operatorname{gcd}\left(a, \frac{\min \left(\alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap \mathbb{N}\right)}{\operatorname{gcd}\left(\min \left(\alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap \mathbb{N}\right), a\right)}\right)=1
$$

Proof. Define $m:=\min \alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap \mathbb{N}$, then $v_{Q}(m) \geq v_{Q}(\alpha)$ for all $Q$. Now we conclude

$$
\operatorname{gcd}\left(a, \frac{m}{\operatorname{gcd}(m, a))}=1\right.
$$

iff $\min \left(v_{p}(a), v_{p}(m)-\min \left(v_{p}(m)-v_{p}(a)\right)\right)=0$ for all $p \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ hence also for $Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L}$.
Now suppose the gcd is 1 , then either $v_{Q}(a)=0$ or $v_{Q}(m) \leq v_{Q}(a)$ implying $v_{Q}(\alpha) \leq$ $v_{Q}(m) \leq v_{Q}(a)$, hence we have a normal presentation by definition.
On the other hand, suppose $(a, \alpha)$ is $P(a)$-normal for $A$. We want to show that $v_{p}(m) \leq v_{p}(a)$ for all $p \in P(a)$. For this, we split $m=b d$ such that $v_{p}(b)=0$ for $p \notin P(a)$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(b, d)=1$, so $v_{p}(d)=0$ for $p \in P(a)$. Since $v_{P}(A)=v_{P}(\alpha)$ for $P \in P(a)$, we see that $a d \in \alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, hence $a d \in \alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L} \cap \mathbb{Z}$, thus $m \mid a d$. Finally, we get $b \mid a$ showing $v_{P}(m)=v_{P}(b) \leq v_{P}(a)$ for $P \in P(a)$ as required.
Remark 6.22: Let $A$ be an integral ideal and $0 \neq a \in A \cap \mathbb{N}$. Then $(a, \alpha)$ for $\alpha \in A$ is a $P(a)$-normal presentation for $A$ iff it is $P(a)$-normal for $\langle a, \alpha\rangle$ and furthermore $A=\langle a, \alpha\rangle$. It is easy to see that $\operatorname{gcd}\left(a^{n}, N(\alpha)\right)=N(A)$ is then sufficient as a test.

The importance of this criterium is three-fold
(1) Computing the minimum as den $\left(\alpha^{-1}\right)$ allows for fast $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ algorithms to compute it
(2) To test $A=\langle a, \alpha\rangle$ is now a norm computation of elements $(N(\alpha))$ which can be done fast $\left(O\left(n^{2}\right)\right)$ and a gcd
(3) There is no need for a factorisation

Algorithm 6.23 (2-Element Normal):
Input: $A$ an integral ideal given via a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis and $a \in A \cap \mathbb{N}$
Output: $\alpha \in A$ such that $(a, \alpha)$ is a $P(a)$-normal presentation for $A$.

1: repeat
2: $\quad \alpha:=\operatorname{Random}\left(A / a^{2} A\right)$
3: until ( $a, \alpha$ ) works.
Lemma 6.24: Let $\alpha$ be chosen uniformly at random from $A / a^{2} A$. Then the probability that $(a, \alpha)$ is a $P(a)$-normal presentation for $A$ is

$$
\prod_{P \mid a}\left(1-\frac{1}{N(P)}\right)
$$

Proof. As above - $P(a)$ normal is just a valuation condition at the finitely many places in $P(a)$. The difference is that 6.15 gives a lower bound on the probability only. Analysing the proof, the elements counted there are exactly the ones giving a normal presentation, so we get the exact probability here.

Lemma 6.25: Let $A=\langle a, \alpha\rangle$ and $B=\langle b, \beta\rangle$ two ideals in $P$-normal representation (for the same set $P$ ). Then $\langle a b, \alpha \beta\rangle$ is a $P$-normal presentation for $A B$.

Proof. Immediate from the valuations.
Note: in general we have $\langle\alpha, \beta\rangle^{d}=\left\langle\alpha^{d}, \beta^{d}\right\rangle$ for any presentation (same for more than 2 generators), but this allows for fast multiplication as well. The downside here the need to have the same set of primes. In one important application however, this is automatically the case: CRT with prime ideals over the same prime number.
Lemma 6.26: Let $P=\langle p, \alpha\rangle$ a prime ideal (eg. coming out of 5.38). Then

- if $e(P / p)>1$, then $(p, \alpha)$ is $P(p)$-normal for $P$.
- if $e(P / p)=1$ and $\alpha \notin P^{2}$ then $(p, \alpha)$ is $P(p)$-normal
- if $e(P / p)=1$ and $\alpha \in P^{2}$ then $(p, p+\alpha)$ is $P(p)$-normal

We note, that to check $\alpha \in P^{2}$, it is sufficient to test $N(P)^{2} \mid N(\alpha)$.
Lemma 6.27: Let $A=\langle a, \alpha\rangle$ an integral ideal in $P$-normal presentation. Then we can find $d \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\left\langle 1, d \alpha^{-1}\right\rangle$ is a $P$-normal presentation for $A^{-1}$.

Proof. Fix some arbitrary $b \in A \cap \mathbb{N}$ and split it as $b=c d$ with $v_{Q}(d)=0$ for $Q \in P_{L}$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(c, d)=1$, so $c \in\langle P\rangle$. Now since $\alpha \mid b=c d$ we have $v_{Q}(\alpha) \leq v_{Q}(d)$ for all $Q \notin P_{L}$. Since $v_{Q}\left(A^{-1}\right)=-v_{Q}(A) \leq 0$, and $v_{Q}(1)=0$, the condition on the 1st generator is satisfied.

Now $v_{Q}\left(d \alpha^{-1}\right)=v_{Q}(d)-v_{Q}(\alpha) \geq 0$ for all $Q \notin P_{L}$ and $v_{Q}\left(d \alpha^{-1}\right)=-v_{Q}(\alpha)=$ $-v_{Q}(A)$ for $Q \in P_{L}$.
Algorithm 6.28 (Prime ideal testing):
Input: $A$ an integral ideal
Output: true iff $A$ is prime, false otherwise
1: $p:=\min A \cap \mathbb{N}$
2: if $p$ is not a prime, return false
3: factorise $p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=\Pi Q_{i}^{e_{i}}$
4: if there is some $i$ such that $A=Q_{i}$ return true
5: return false

## 3. Missing Prime Ideals

Now it's time to factorise the prime numbers not covered by 5.38. Unfortunately this is based on enitrely new ideas - or maybe not: it is meant to resemble the Berlekamp polynomial factorisation.

Let $\mathcal{O}$ be an order and $p$ a prime number. The $\mathcal{O} / p \mathcal{O}$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-algebra, more specifically,

$$
A:=\mathcal{O} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}
$$

is a semi-simple $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-algebra. In fact, we know

$$
\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}=\cap Q_{i}
$$

where $Q_{i}$ runs over all prime ideals in $\mathcal{O}$ containing $p$ and thus using CRT:

$$
A=\mathcal{O} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}=\oplus \mathcal{O} / Q_{i}=\oplus \mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}
$$

Note that $\mathbb{Z} \subseteq \mathcal{O}$ and thus induces an embedding $\mathbb{F}_{p} \subseteq A$.

## Algorithm 6.29:

Input: $A$ as above
Output: Either a proof that $A$ is a field or a non-trivial idempotent $\varepsilon$ such that $\varepsilon^{2}=\varepsilon \neq 0,1$

1: Set $\varphi: A \rightarrow A: x \mapsto x^{p}-x$ and compute $V:=\operatorname{ker} \varphi$
2: if $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{F}_{p}} V=1$, then this proves $A$ to be a field and we terminate.
3: Let $\alpha \in V \backslash \mathbb{F}_{p}$ and $m_{\alpha}$ it's minimal polynomial
4: Factorise $m_{\alpha}=m_{1} m_{2}$ with non-constant coprime $m_{1}, m_{2}$
5: Find $X, Y \in \mathbb{F}_{p}[t]$ such that $X m_{1}+Y m_{2}=1$
6: Return $\varepsilon:=\left(X m_{1}\right)(\alpha)$
Proof. From the CRT it follows that $\varphi$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-linear map with kernel

$$
\operatorname{ker} \varphi=\oplus F_{p}
$$

since $V_{i}:=\left.\operatorname{ker} \varphi\right|_{\mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}}=\mathbb{F}_{p}$ for all $i$. This shows that steps (1) and (2) are correct and that we can find some $\alpha$ in step (3). In each component $V_{i}$ of $V$, the minimal polynomial is linear, thus $m_{\alpha}$ as the lcm of the minimal polynomials in $V_{i}$ is the product of pairwise coprime linears.

Now since $m_{\alpha}(\alpha)=0$, we have $X m_{1} \equiv 1-Y m_{2} \bmod m_{\alpha}$, thus $\varepsilon^{2}=\left(X m_{1}\right)\left(X m_{1}\right)=$ $\left(X m_{1}\right)\left(1-Y m_{2}\right)=X m_{1}-X Y m_{1} m_{2}=X m_{1}$ hence $\varepsilon$ is idempotent. Furthermore, since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(X, m_{2}\right)=1, \varepsilon$ is non-zero and $1-\varepsilon=Y m_{2}(\alpha) \neq 0$ by the same argument.

Some comments:

- The idempotent is used to split $A=\varepsilon A+(1-\varepsilon) A$ into two smaller $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-algebras (or prove that $A$ is a field). Using the algorithm again, we can split $A$ into a direct sum of fields:

$$
A=\mathcal{O} / I=\oplus \mathcal{O} / Q_{i}=\oplus \mathbb{F}_{Q_{i}}
$$

- To compute the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ we use the $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-vectorspace structure: writing $\alpha^{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{p}^{n}$, we can find the coefficients of the minimal polynomial as kernel vectors.
- The multiplication in $A$ is of course inherited from $\mathcal{O}$. In order to multiply in $A$ we simply lift the elements to $\mathcal{O}$, form the product and project down again
- Alternatively, we can compute a multiplication table for $A$
- In step (4) we use the ordinary factorisation over finite fields to split $m_{\alpha}$. Since we have more factors, we may as well split $A$ according to all of them.
- Step (5) is, of course, just the extended gcd over $\mathbb{F}_{p}$
- There is a variation of this algorithm valid in characteristic 0 .

Lemma 6.30: Let $A / I=C / I \oplus D / I$ for $I$ as above. Then we have two ideals $Q_{1}:=\langle I, C\rangle$ and $Q_{2}=\langle I, D\rangle$ and $C D=I$. In order to compute $Q_{i}$ we just need an arbitrary lift of any $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-basis of $C$ to $\mathcal{O}$.
Lemma 6.31: Let $A=\mathcal{O} / \sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}=\oplus \mathcal{O} / Q_{i}$ for fields $\mathcal{O} / Q_{i}$. Then $Q_{i}$ is a prime ideal and $f_{i}\left(Q_{i}\right)=\operatorname{dim}_{F_{p}}\left(\mathcal{O} / Q_{i}\right)$. In particular we can find $f_{i}$ without computing $Q_{i}$

The missing data for the prime ideals are the ramification index $e_{i}$. In order to compute this we can "simply" compute the valuation

$$
e_{i}=v_{Q_{i}}(p)
$$

however, this requires a valuation element. We can either compute this using CRT (CRT needs just bases!) requiring a large number of ideal multiplications, or use the 2 -element normal presentation, which might be hard to find.
Example 6.32: Let $f:=t^{3}+t^{2}-2 t+8$. We showed before that the maximal order is $\mathbb{Z}_{L}=\mathbb{Z}+\mathbb{Z} t+\mathbb{Z}\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(t+t^{2}\right)\right)$. Now we'd like to compute the (alleged) three prime ideals over 2.

To compute the radical, we need the kernel of $x \mapsto x^{4} \bmod 2 \mathbb{Z}_{L} \cdot 1^{4}=1, t^{4} \bmod f=$ $3 t^{2}-10 t+8=6 \omega_{3}-13 \omega_{2}+8 \equiv \omega_{2} \bmod 2$ CHECK and $\left(t+t^{2}\right)^{4} \bmod f=$ $40 t^{2}+8 t+288$, dividing by $4:\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(t+t^{2}\right)\right)^{4}=10 t^{2}+2 t+72=5 \omega_{3}-2 \omega_{2}+18 \equiv \omega_{3} \bmod 2$, hence ker $=0$ and $I=\langle 2\rangle$, so $A=\mathbb{F}_{2}^{3}$. Next, we need $\operatorname{ker}\left(x \mapsto x^{2}\right): 1^{2}=1, \omega_{2}^{2}=\omega_{2}^{2}$ and $\omega_{3}^{2}=\omega_{3}-2 \omega_{2}-2$, looking at this mod2, we see that $V=A$ of dimension 3 .
Take $\alpha=\omega_{2}=t$, we know the minimal polynomial in $\mathbb{Z}[t], t^{3}+t^{2}-2 t+8 \equiv$ $t^{2}(t+1) \bmod 2$, hence $m_{\alpha}=t(t+1)$. From $1=1 \cdot t+1 \cdot(t+1)$ we compute $\varepsilon=\alpha=\omega_{2}$ and $A=\left\langle\omega_{2}\right\rangle / I+\left\langle\omega_{2}+1\right\rangle / I$.

By computing representation matrices, we see that the 1st ideal has norm 4, while the second has norm 2 , hence is already prime. We now need to recurse the algorithm on $\mathbb{Z}_{L} /\left\langle\omega_{2}, I\right\rangle$.
We compute a basis for $\left\langle\omega_{2}, 2\right\rangle$ as $2, \omega_{2}$ and $2 \omega_{3}$, hence $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{K} /\left\langle\omega_{2}, 2\right\rangle \backslash \mathbb{F}_{2}$ can be $\omega_{3}$. Since $\omega_{3}^{2}=-2-2 t+\omega_{3} \equiv \omega_{3} \bmod \left\langle\omega_{2}, 2\right\rangle$, the minimal polynomial is again $t(t+1)$. Thus the final split is $\left\langle\omega_{3}, \omega_{2}, 2\right\rangle,\left\langle\omega_{3}+1, \omega_{2}, 2\right\rangle$ and $\left\langle\omega_{2}+1,2\right\rangle$.

To summarise:
Algorithm 6.33 (Cohen-Lenstra):
Input: Order $\mathcal{O}$ and prime number $p$

Output: All prime ideals containing $p$.
1: Compute $I=\sqrt{p \mathcal{O}}$
2: Let $H:=\{I\}$
3: while $H$ is non-empty do
4: $\quad$ take $B$ from $H$ and remove it.
5: $\quad$ apply 6.29 to $\mathcal{O} / B$ and either print $B$ (in case $\mathcal{O} / B$ is a field) or include the new $B_{i}$ in $H$

## 4. $S$-Units

Theorem 6.34 (Product formula): Let $\alpha \in L^{*}$ be arbitrary. Then

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{n} \alpha^{(i)} \prod_{P \in \mathbb{P}_{L}} N(P)^{-v_{P}(\alpha)}=1
$$

Proof. We know $|N(\alpha)|=N\left(\alpha \mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)$, so the statment follows from the computation of the norm via conjugates, the unique prime decomposition of ideals in Dedekind domains and the multiplicativity of the norm of ideals.
Theorem 6.35: Let $S \subseteq \mathbb{P}_{L}$ be a finite set of prime ideals. Then $T\left(U_{S}\right)=T U\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)$ and

$$
U_{S} / T\left(U_{S}\right)=\left\langle\varepsilon_{i} \mid 1 \leq i \leq \# S+r_{1}+r_{2}-1\right\rangle
$$

is a free $\mathbb{Z}$-module of rank $r_{1}+r_{2}-1+\# S$.
Proof. Define a map:

$$
\varphi: U_{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^{S}: \alpha \mapsto\left(v_{P}(\alpha)\right)_{P \in S}
$$

then this is well defined and, mostly by definition, $\operatorname{ker} \varphi=U_{L}$. Let $P \in S$ be arbitrary, then, due to $h_{L}<\infty, P^{h}=\left\langle\beta_{P}\right\rangle$. Clearly, $\varphi(\beta)=(0, \ldots, 0, h, 0, \ldots, 0)$ showing that $\mathrm{rg}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathrm{im} \varphi)=\# S$

So the class group algorithm can be viewed as trying to compute a generating system for the $S$-units. We also note that the map $\varphi$ used in the proof of the theorem is constructive: all we need is to compute valuations $v_{P}(\alpha)$ for a finite fixed set $S$.
Remark 6.36: Let $\alpha \in L^{*}$ and $S \subseteq \mathbb{P}_{L}$ a finite set of prime ideals. Then $\alpha \in U_{S}$ iff $N(\alpha)=\prod_{P \in S} N(P)^{v_{P}(\alpha)}$ which is easy to test without computing $U_{S}$.

However, the problem is using the $S$-unit theorem is the kernel. We start with the easy observation:
Lemma 6.37: Let $\alpha_{i} \in U_{S}(1 \leq i \leq a)$ and define $V:=\left\langle\alpha_{i} \mid i\right\rangle \leq U_{S}$. Set $M:=\left(v_{P}\left(\alpha_{i}\right)\right)_{i, S} \in \mathbb{Z}^{a \times \# S}$ and $k_{j} \in \mathbb{Z}^{a}$ a $\mathbb{Z}$-generating system for ker $M$. Then

$$
\left.\operatorname{ker} \varphi\right|_{V}=\left\langle\prod_{j} \alpha_{j}^{k_{i, j}} \mid i\right\rangle=V \cap U_{L}
$$

Proof. Since $\varphi$ is a homomorphism, we note that a linear combination of rows of $M$ correspond to power products of the $\alpha_{i}$, thus by the remark above, the ker $M$ corresponds to units.

So, we see that this gives a new method for actually computing units! In order to use this, we need to solve the problem of finding dependencies between units. We'd like to use the logarithmic $L$-maps introduced in the chapter on units, but now need to be more careful about the numerical problems: we are only working in finite precision, hence cannot decide (numerically) if $L(\varepsilon)=0$ holds or not. To help we have (without proof)

Theorem 6.38 (Dobrowski): Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, $\operatorname{deg} L=n>1$. Then either $\alpha \in T U\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)$ or there exists a conjugate $\alpha^{(i)}$ such that

$$
\left|\alpha^{(i)}\right| \geq 1+\frac{1}{6} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}
$$

Corollary 6.39: Let $\varepsilon \in U_{L}$ then either $\varepsilon \in T U\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)$ or $\|L(\varepsilon)\|_{2} \geq \frac{21}{128} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}$.

Proof. We have $L(\varepsilon)=\left(\log \left|\varepsilon^{(i)}\right|\right)_{i}$. By Dobrowski, either $L(\varepsilon)=0$ or $\mid \varepsilon^{(i)} \geq$ $1+\frac{1}{6} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}$, so we assume the latter. Noting that for $1>x>0$ we have $\log (1+x)>$ $x-1 / 2 x^{2}=x(1-1 / 2 x)$, (since $x \rightarrow x-1 / 2 x^{2}$ is increasing on $[0,1]$ ), so

$$
\begin{aligned}
\log 1+\frac{1}{6} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}} & \geq \frac{1}{6} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}-\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{36} \frac{\log ^{2} n}{n^{4}} \\
& =\frac{1}{6} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}\left(1-\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{6} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}\right) \\
& \geq \frac{1}{6} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}\left(1-\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{6} \frac{3 / 4}{4}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{6} \frac{63}{64} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

This works since $n \rightarrow n^{-2} \log n$ is decreasing for $n \geq 2$ and $\log 2 \leq 3 / 4$ (numerically).

Lemma 6.40: Let $\varepsilon_{i}\left(1 \leq i \leq a<r_{1}+r_{2}\right)$ be independent units. Then there exists some $K>0$ such that if $\varepsilon$ is an additional unit and $\varepsilon=\Pi \varepsilon_{i}^{n_{i}}$ then $n_{i} \leq K\|L(\varepsilon)\|_{2}$.

Proof. If $\varepsilon=\Pi \varepsilon_{i}^{n_{i}}$, then clearly $L(\varepsilon)=\sum n_{i} L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)$ as well. Let $X:=\left(L\left(\varepsilon_{1}\right), \ldots, L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)\right)$, then we get $L(\varepsilon)=X\left(n_{i}\right)_{i}$. We now multiply by $X^{t}$ from the left: $X^{t} L(\varepsilon)=$ $\left(X^{t} X\right)\left(n_{i}\right)_{i}$ where $X^{t} X \in \operatorname{Gl}(a, \mathbb{R})$.

Consider $\mathcal{L}:=\sum \mathbb{Z} L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)$ the lattice spanned by $L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)$. Then Minkowski's theorem shows

$$
M_{1}^{a} \leq \gamma_{a}^{a} d(\mathcal{L})
$$

By construction $\operatorname{det} X^{t} X=d^{2}(\mathcal{L})$ and, by Dobrowski, $M_{1} \geq \frac{21}{128} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}=: K_{0}$, so $\operatorname{det} X^{t} X \geq K_{0}^{a} \gamma_{a}^{-a}=: K_{1}$ By Cramer's rule

$$
n_{i}=\operatorname{det}\left(X^{t} L\left(\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, L(\varepsilon), \ldots, L\left(\varepsilon_{a}\right)\right)\right) / \operatorname{det}\left(X^{t} X\right)
$$

Hadamat shows

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(X^{t}\left(L\left(\varepsilon_{1}\right), \ldots, L(\varepsilon), \ldots, L\left(\varepsilon_{a}\right)\right)\right) \leq\|L(\varepsilon)\|_{2} K_{2}, \operatorname{son}_{i} \leq K_{2} / K_{1}\|L(\varepsilon)\|_{2}
$$

as required.

We note that the "denominator" estimate from Dobrowski's theorem is very pessimistic. In important cases (eg. if the unit group has already full rank), we can frequently use better lower bounds.

The lemma is instrumental in deciding how much precision needs to be used for the real-linear algebra:

$$
L(\varepsilon)=\sum n_{i} L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)
$$

iff

$$
\left\|L(\varepsilon)-\sum n_{i} L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)\right\|_{2} \leq \frac{21}{128} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}
$$

Note however, that $L(\varepsilon)=\sum n_{i} L\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)$ does not give the dependency: $\operatorname{ker} L=$ $T U\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}\right)$, so we sill need to account for the torsion.

An additional complication comes from the rounding-errors during the linear algebra, however those are either well known (to numerical people) or can be avoided by using integral operations only: Instead of solving $L(\varepsilon)=\ldots$, we define $L_{\lambda}(\varepsilon):=$ $\left(\left\lfloor\lambda \log \left|\varepsilon^{(i)}\right|\right\rceil\right)_{i}$ and search for short elements in

$$
\mathbb{Z} L_{\lambda}+\sum \mathbb{Z} L_{\lambda}\left(\varepsilon_{i}\right)
$$

We know the shortest element in here (provided $\lambda$ is large enough), as the non-zero minimum should larger than $\lambda \frac{21}{128} \frac{\log n}{n^{2}}$. Hence any short combination has to come from an exact zero.

The goal now is to combine all this into an algorithm to compute the class group and, if possible, the unit group as well. By the $S$-unit theorem we know that the relation matrix wil have full rank, eventually. The proof of the Dirichlet unit theorem shows furthermore, that eventually, the kernel of the relation matrix will generate the full unit group. Thus, eventually, if the relation matrix is "complete" we have both the units and the class group.

The problem is in deciding when we are "complete": it is "easy" to check that both image and kernel have the correct rank, but this only shows that we have a subgroup of the $S$-unit group of finite index. We'd like the index to be 1 .

## 5. $\zeta$-Function

Definition 6.41: Let

$$
\zeta_{L}(s):=\sum_{A \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}} N(A)^{-s}
$$

for $\Re(s)>1$ the $\zeta$-function of $L$.
LEmmA 6.42: The $\zeta$-function has many important properties:
(1) The series convereges uniformely for $\Re(s)>1$, thus defines a holomorphic function there.
(2) The function has a meromorphic extension to the entire complex plane $\mathbb{C}$
(3) The function has a simple pole at $s=1$ and is holomorphic elsewhere
(4) There is a functional equation linking $\zeta_{L}(s)$ to $\zeta_{L}(1-s)$

Proof. Unfortunately, most of this is too hard for now - it requires a dedicated lecture.

Lemma 6.43 (GRH- Generalised Riemannian Hypothesis): It is conjectured that

$$
\left\{s \in \mathbb{C} \mid \zeta_{L}(s)=0\right\} \subseteq\{s \in \mathbb{C} \mid \Re(s)=1 / 2\}
$$

apart from "trivial zeroes".
The importance of the $\zeta$-function for us stems from some consequences:
Theorem 6.44: For the residue of the $\zeta$-function we have:

$$
\operatorname{Res}_{s=1} \zeta_{L}=2^{r_{1}}(2 \pi)^{r_{2}} \frac{h_{L} R_{L}}{\omega \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}}
$$

where $h_{L}$ is the class number, $R_{L}$ the regulator, $\omega$ the size of the torsio group and $d_{L}$ the discriminant of the maximal order.

So, if we could compute the residue, we'd have a link between the regulator and the class number! The next theorem implies a means to compute it (well approximate it)

THEOREM 6.45 (Euler product): The $\zeta$-function admits an Euler product

$$
\zeta_{L}(s)=\prod \frac{1}{1-N(P)^{-s}}
$$

where the product converges uniformely on $\Re(s)>1$
LEMMA 6.46:

$$
\operatorname{Res}_{s=1} \zeta_{L}=\prod_{p \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{Z}}} \prod_{Q \mid p} \frac{1-1 / p}{1-1 / N(Q)}
$$

This gives a means to approximate the residue, the factors of the above product are easily computed (also explaining why in the index divisor factorisation it was important to easily get the inertia degrees, hence the norms).

Of course, the lemma does not mention at all the rate of convergence. Here we have:
Theorem 6.47 (Bach, GHR): There exists an explicit constant $D>0$ such that the residue can be approximated within an error of $\sqrt{2}$ using primes of norm $\leq D \log ^{2}\left(\left|d_{L}\right|\right)$ only. Moreover, there is an polynomial algorithm computing this approximation.

This means, we have an algorithm, running on $O\left(\log ^{2}\left|d_{L}\right|\right)$ computing some number $E$ satisfying $1 / \sqrt{2} \leq E / \operatorname{Res} \leq \sqrt{2}$.

This implies a stopping condition of the relation search in the class group algorithm: if the relation matrix has full rank, we have a tentative class group, more precisely, we found a finite group $C$ such that $\mathrm{Cl}_{L}=C / U$, hence $h_{L} \mid \# C$, we have a multiple of the class number. Similarly, if the kernel is large enough, we have a subgroup $U$ of the unit group of finite index, hence we also have a multiple $R$ of the regulator. Combining everything: iff $1 / 2<\# C R / E<2$ then $C=\mathrm{Cl}$ and $R=R_{L}$ and we're done.

Using the GRH, we get another benefit:

Theorem 6.48 (Bach, GRH): Let

$$
B:=\left\{Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L}\left|N(Q) \leq 12 \log ^{2}\right| d_{L} \mid\right\}
$$

then $\mathrm{Cl}_{L}=\langle B\rangle$
Since $\log ^{2}\left|d_{L}\right| \ll \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}$, this is much better than the use of the Minkowski-bound. However

- This is conditional under the GRH only
- In contrast to the Minkowski bound, giving a representative for any ideal class bounded by the constant, this bounds a generating set only.

It should be noted that, experimentally, even the Bach-bound is too large.
Theorem 6.49 (Brauer-Siegel): Let $L_{n}$ be a sequence of number fields of fixed degree $N$ over $\mathbb{Q}$. Then

$$
\log h_{n} R_{n} \sim \log \sqrt{\left|d_{n}\right|}
$$

In partiular to imaginary quadratic fields (where the regulator is trivial), that $h_{n} \rightarrow$ $\infty$. In this case, this was made constructive: there are explicit lists of all imaginary quadratic fields with class number $1,2, \ldots, 100$ by now (Watkins, 2004).
Experimentally, in general, the class number is small, hence the regulator is large. However, it is unknown if there is an infinite number of fields with class number one. Heuristically and experimentally, $75 \%$ of real quadratic fields have class number 1. This is part of the Cohen-Lenstra (and Malle, Martinet) conjectures about class groups. As a consequence, for real-quadratic fields, we have reg $= \pm \log \left|\varepsilon^{(1)}\right| \sim \sqrt{d}$ for any fundamental units. This shows, that we cannot expect to be able to write any fundamental unit in time polynomial in the input - at least not this way, using coordinates. Also, since the real-precision necessary to obtain the logarithm from the coordinate is also at least as large as the number of digits, we need a huge precision.
A partial solution to this problem is to use the product representation: in the algorithm, units are always obtained as power products: $\varepsilon=\Pi \alpha_{i}^{n_{i}}$. Assuming $\alpha_{i}$ and $n_{i}$ are "small" this reduces the precision.

We'll refine the class group algorithm based on the ideas accumulated so far. We assume that we somehow have fixed a factor base

$$
B:=\left\{Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L} \mid N(Q) \leq X\right\}
$$

and an approximation $E$ to the Euler product as above.
Algorithm 6.50 (Relation processing):
Input: $\alpha$, a possible relation
Output: Either false if $\alpha$ is no relation or the complete factorisation.
1: Compute $N:=|N(\alpha)|$
2: If $N$ is not $X$-smooth, return false
3: For $Q \in B$ do
4: $\quad$ if $N(Q) \mid N$, then
5: $\quad e_{Q}:=v_{Q}(\alpha)$
6: $\quad N:=N / N(Q)^{e}{ }^{\text {a }}$. If $N=1$, return $\left(e_{Q}\right)_{Q}$

Algorithm 6.51 (Relation matrix processing):
Input: a set of (possible) relations $S$
Output: false if we need more relations, $h_{L}$ and $\operatorname{reg}_{L}$ otherwise
1: Compute the relation matrix $M=\left(M_{\alpha, Q}\right)_{\alpha, Q}$ using the above algorithm.
2: Compute the Smith-form of $M$. If $M$ has not full rank, i. e. some elementary divsors are 0 , return false, else let $h$ be the product of the elementary divsors.

3: Compute a basis $k_{i}$ for the kernel of $M$.
4: Compute $U:=\left\langle\Pi \alpha^{k_{i}, \alpha} \mid i\right\rangle$.
5: If $\operatorname{rg} U<r$, return false, else $R:=\operatorname{reg}(U)$
6: If $1 / \sqrt{2}<R h<\sqrt{2}$, return $(h, R)$, else false
There are many practical optimisations to both algorithms to be done:
(1) In general, we do not compute the norm exactly, but use a probabilistic algorithm only. If the norm is wrong, we "loose" a few relations, but might gain speed.
(2) Also, in general, $\alpha \in A$ for some explicitly known ideal $A$, hence $N(A) \mid N(\alpha)$ which is also used
(3) Instead of computing the Smith-form, we usually start by computing the rank modulo some medium sized prime.
(4) If the rank is not full, we also study the missing pivot elements to find the ideals that need more relations. This allows for a more targeted search
(5) Directly computing the entire kernel of $M$ is very expensive (time and memory), hence one computes only a few kernel elements coming from suitable submatrices. If those are sufficient, we're done.
(6) Also, the process is incremental: if we need more relations, we keep as much information as possible: a partial echelon form modulo $p$, a Smith-form, some units. We simply append and process the new relations.
(7) If, in step (6) we have $1 / m<R H<m$ we can apply the saturation techniques from 4.27 noting that (almost) nothing in there is unit specific. It is sometimes much faster to saturate than to hunt the missing relation.

Still missing are, of course
(1) Relation search
(2) $p$-th roots for the saturation (compact representation)
(3) Overall analysis

## 6. Class Group

Algorithm 6.52 (Ideal-Class Reduction):
Input: Ideal $A \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$, weights $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^{r}$ such that both $N(A)$ and $\exp \lambda_{i}=O\left(d_{L}\right)$ Output: $\alpha$ such that $A \alpha \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}, N(\alpha A) \leq C \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}$ for some explicit $C$ independent of $A$ and $\lambda, T_{2, \lambda}(\alpha)$ small.

1: $v:=(1 / n) \sum c_{i} \lambda_{i}, \mu:=\exp \left(\lambda_{i}-v\right)$
2: $\alpha$ the 1st LLL-basis element of $A^{-1}$ in $T_{2, \mu}$

Proof. By construction, $\Pi \mu_{i}=1$, hence the algebraic-geometric means shows

$$
|N(\alpha)|^{2 n} \leq \frac{1}{n} T_{2, \mu}(\alpha)
$$

LLL implies

$$
T_{2, \mu}^{n}(\alpha) \leq C\left|d_{L}\right| N(A)^{-2}
$$

hence $N(\alpha A) \leq C^{\prime} \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}$ and the rest follows.
Algorithm 6.53 (Ideal Product Reduction):
Input: $\Pi A_{i}^{n_{i}}$ for $n_{i} \geq 0$ and $A_{i} \leq Z_{L}$
Output: $\Pi \alpha_{i}^{r_{i}}, B \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that

$$
\prod A_{i}^{n_{i}}=B \prod \alpha_{i}^{r_{i}}
$$

and $N(B), T_{2}\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ "small".
1: $\quad B:=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$
2: repeat
3: $\quad$ Find a sub-product $C=B \Pi A_{j}^{k_{j}}$ such that $N(C) \geq\left|d_{L}\right|$ is minimal.
4: Use 6.52 to write $C=\alpha B$ for some small $\alpha$ and a new ideal $B$ and replace the product.

For any integral ideal $A=\Pi Q^{v_{Q}(A)}$ we define $\lfloor\sqrt[r]{A}\rfloor:=\Pi Q^{\left\lfloor v_{Q}(A) / r\right\rfloor}$. While in general, we cannot compute this without a full factorisation, in the context of class group algorithms, the factorisation is genrally known.

## Algorithm 6.54:

Input: $\Pi \alpha_{i}^{k_{i}}$ with $\alpha_{i}$ small, $l>0$ and $B$ the corresponding principal ideal (of small norm).
Output: $\beta_{i}$ such that $\Pi \alpha_{i}^{k_{i}}=\prod_{i=0}^{k} \beta_{i}^{l^{i}}$ where $k=O\left(\log \left(T_{2}\left(\Pi \alpha_{i}^{k_{i}}\right)\right)\right)$
1: Compute $\left(v_{i}\right)_{i}:=\left(\Pi \alpha_{j}^{k_{j}}\right)^{(i)}$, the conjugates
2: Set $I:=\mathbb{Z}_{L}$
3: for $k:=\log \|v\|_{\infty}$ to 0 do
4: $\quad \lambda_{i}:=\sqrt[l^{k}]{\left|v_{i}\right|}$
5: $\quad$ Call 6.52 for $I^{l}\lfloor\sqrt[l^{k}]{B}\rfloor$ and $\lambda$ to find $\beta_{k}$ and and new (small) ideal $I$
6: $\quad\left(v_{i}\right):=\left(v_{i} /\left(\beta_{k}^{(i)}\right)^{l^{k}}\right)_{i}$

Proof. In each iteration, $\|v\|_{\infty}$ is reduced by a factor of $\sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}$ roughly and $N(\sqrt[l k]{B})$ stays bounded.

The algorithm 6.54 is important for 2 unreleated reasons:
(1) It allows the reduction modulo $l$-th powers, hence, in particular, the "easier" computation of $l$-th roots of huge power products for the saturation
(2) The resulting power product has a total size that is polynomial in the logarithm of the conjugates, hence allows to compute a representation of units that is polynomial in the regulator!

However, in order to apply those techniques we still need a real precision that depends on the size of the input, thus can be much too large. A second, more subtle problem is that, on input we have a power product of relations, while on output we generally don't.

It should be mentioned that the algorithm outlined above is a crucial part in modern integer factorisation methods: the NFS algorithm produces, near the end, a huge list of $>10^{6}$ algebraic numbers. At that point of the algorithm it it known that the product is a square. One needs a root to finish.

To find relations we have several possibilities and this is on-going research. Fundamentally, one tries to find suitable $T_{2}$-small elements, since then they will have a "small" norm, hence should be composed from "small" prime ideals.

Algorithm 6.55 (Relations 1):
Input: Integral ideal $A$ and weights $v$
Output: Relation(s) involving $A$
1: find $T_{2, v}$ small elements as $L L L$-basis elements
Algorithm 6.56 (Relations 2):
Input: Integral ideal $A$ and weights $v$
Output: Relation(s) involving $A$
1: find $T_{2, v}$ small elements via lattice enumeration

## Algorithm 6.57 (Relations 3):

Input: Integral ideal $A$
Output: Relation(s) involving $A$
1: find a random power product $C$ of elements in the factor basis $B$ until the norm is larger than $d_{L}$

2: Use 6.52 to find $\alpha$ such that $\alpha C$ is small and hope that $\alpha$ is a relation
Algorithm 6.58 (Relations 4):
Input: Integral ideal $A$
Output: Relation(s) involving $A$
1: Find two $T_{2}$ small elements $\alpha$ and $\beta \in A$
2: Compute $f(x, y)=N(x \alpha+y \beta) / N(A) \in \mathbb{Z}[x, y]$
3: Use sieve-methods to find lots of pairs $(x, y)$ such that $f(x, y)$ is $B$-smooth, i.e. involves only primes in $B$

4: return $x \alpha+y \beta$
The 3rd method is the one that allowed Buchmann to analyse the overall algorithm. His result is based on

Theorem 6.59: Let

$$
\psi_{L}(x, y):=\#\left\{A \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L} \mid N(A) \leq x \text { and } P \mid A \Rightarrow N(P) \leq y\right\}
$$

be the number of $y$-smooth ideals of norm bounded by $x$. Then $\forall n \in \mathbb{N}, \varepsilon>$ $0 \exists x_{0}(\varepsilon, n) \forall x>x_{0} \forall y, L$ such that $\max \left(\log ^{1+\varepsilon}(x), \log ^{2+\varepsilon}\left|d_{L}\right|\right) \leq \exp \left(\log ^{1-\varepsilon}(x)\right)$ we have

$$
\psi_{L}(x, y) \geq x \exp \left(-u\left(\log \left(u+\log \log u+O\left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon}+\log \tilde{n}\right)\right)\right)\right)
$$

for $u:=\log x / \log y$ and $\tilde{n}$ the degree of the normal closure of $L$

This theorem is applied to $y:=C \log ^{2}\left|d_{L}\right|$ (which is not quite correct) to show that in this case there exist sufficiently many "smooth" ideals of bounded norm. Since the only (practical) reduction, using LLL, results in ideals of norm $O\left(\sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}\right)$, we're going to have $x=\tilde{C} \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}$ (where $\tilde{C}$ is explicit!) and have to choose $C$ (thus $y$ ) to make the above estimate yield enough relations. Obviously, we need at least one relation for each element of the factor base, so, while a larger factor base makes the search for individual relations easier it also requires more relations to be found.

Buchmann analysed this dependency and came up with an asymptotically optimal choice resulting in a sub-exponential total run-time.

Algorithm 6.60 (Complete Classgroup):
Input: A number field $L$
Output: A factor basis $B$, a set of relations $\alpha_{i} \in U_{B}$ and a relation matrix giving the strutcture of the class group.
1: Compute $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ (or better: a LLL-reduced basis for $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ )
2: Compute a factor base $B:=\left\{Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L} \mid N(Q) \leq C_{1}\right\}$
3: Compute an approximation to the Euler product (with error bounded by $\sqrt{2})$
4: Find enough relations so that the relation matrix has full rank and approximates the Euler product by a small error

5: For all small primes (bounded by the error) and all elementary divisors of the relation matrix, saturate the relations.
6: For all prime $Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L} \backslash B$ and $N(Q) \leq C_{2}$ find some $\alpha \in Q \backslash Q^{2}$ such that $\alpha \in U_{B \cup\{Q\}}$

Typically, $C_{1}=c_{1} \log ^{2}\left|d_{L}\right|$ for $c_{1}<1$ and $C_{2}$ is either $12 \log ^{2}\left|d_{L}\right|$ for GRH results or $c_{2} \sqrt{\left|d_{L}\right|}$ for unconditional results. Step (4) is inserted since saturation is frequently faster in finding the "last" missing relation. Step (5) finds the missing relations, while (6) proves that we did not make a mistake in choosing $C_{1}$ too small. Without (6) we could have computed a subgroup of the class group only.

Algorithm 6.61 ( $S$-Units):
Input: A finite set $S \subseteq \mathbb{P}_{L}$ and the output of 6.60
Output: A set of fundamental $S$-units
1: for all $Q \in S$ find some $\alpha \in Q \backslash Q^{2}$ such that $\alpha \in U_{B \cup S}$
2: Build an extended relation matrix $M$ for $B \cup S$ and the new relations $\alpha$
3: $U_{S}=\left\{m \in[M]_{\mathbb{Z}} \mid m_{Q}=0\right.$ for $\left.q \notin S\right\}$
AlGorithm 6.62 (Principal ideal testing):
Input: An integral ideal $A \leq \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ and the output of 6.60
Output: false or $\alpha$ such that $\langle\alpha\rangle=A$
1: find $\alpha \in A$ such that $N(\alpha) / \Pi N(P)^{v_{P}(\alpha)}=N(A) / \Pi N(P)^{v_{P}(A)}$
2: if $\left(v_{P}(\alpha)\right)_{P \in S} \in[M]$ then $A$ is a PID and a generator can be found using linear algebra

For $\alpha$ as above we have $A / \alpha \in\langle B\rangle$, and thus $A$ is PID iff $A / \alpha$ is. The latter can now be decided using the relations already known. On the other hand, since $\left\langle B, L^{*}\right\rangle=I_{L}$, such an $\alpha$ does exist.

This is the basis for a great deal of further algorithms, e.g one can solve norm equations, study field extensions (class field theory), aid other Diophantine equations (Thue, Unit equations, Indexform equations)

Example 6.63: Let $L:=K(\sqrt{a}) / K$ be a number field of degree 2. Then we can find $M / L$ of degree 2 such that $M / K$ is cyclic iff $a=u^{2}+v^{2}$ for some $u, v \in K$. This is equivalent to $a=N(\gamma)$ for $\gamma \in K(i)$.

Proof. We note that $K(\sqrt{a})=K(\sqrt{b})$ iff $a / b \in(K)^{2}$ and, since the characteristic is different from 2 , and $M / L$ is quadratic, $M=L(\sqrt{\alpha})$ for some $\alpha \in L$. Hence $\alpha=$ $s+t \sqrt{a}$. Since $M / K$ should be cyclic, we see $t \neq 0$ since otherwise $\operatorname{Aut}(M / K)=V_{4}$. Thus we see $\left(x^{2}-(s+t \sqrt{a})\right)\left(x^{2}-(s-t \sqrt{a})\right) \in K[x]$ is irreducible with a root $\sqrt{\alpha} \in M$. Galois immediately show that $x^{2}-(s-t \sqrt{a})$ needs to have a root $\sqrt{\beta}$ as well, $\alpha / \beta \in(L)^{2}$ hence $\alpha \beta \in(L)^{2}$ also. We conclude $\alpha \beta=s^{2}-t^{2} a=(u+v \sqrt{a})^{2}=$ $u^{2}+v^{2} a+2 u v \sqrt{a}$ and $u, v, s, t \in K$, hence $u v=0$. If $v=0$ then one can see that the Galois group is wrong again by studying

$$
\sqrt{s+t \sqrt{a}} \mapsto \alpha / \beta \sqrt{s-t \sqrt{a}}
$$

which has only order 2 then. So $u=0$ and

$$
s^{2}-t^{2} a=v^{2} a
$$

thus

$$
a=\frac{a^{2}}{t^{2}+v^{2}}=\left(\frac{s v}{v^{2}+t^{2}}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{s t}{v^{2}+t^{2}}\right)^{2}
$$

as claimed.

To solve norm equations, like in the last example, we can use $S$-units. But before we start, we need a lemma:
Lemma 6.64: Let $L / \mathbb{Q}$ be quadratic and $A \in I_{L}$ be an ideal of norm 1 . Then

$$
A=\prod Q^{1-\sigma}
$$

for suitable prime ideals $Q \in \mathbb{P}_{L}$ and $\sigma: L \rightarrow L$ the non-trivial automorphism.

Proof. Let $p \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ and $Q_{i}$ the prime ideals above $p$. Then since $N(A)=1$, we also have $\prod_{Q \mid p} N(Q)^{v_{Q}(A)}=1$. Now, we either have $p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=Q$ or $=Q^{2}$, in which case $v_{Q}(A)=0$ or $p \mathbb{Z}_{L}=Q_{1} Q_{2}=Q^{1+\sigma}$ and $v_{Q}(A)=-v_{\sigma(Q)}(A)$. So $v_{Q}\left(A Q^{v_{Q}(A)(1+\sigma)}\right)=$ 0 and $N\left(A Q^{v_{Q}(A)(1+\sigma)}\right)=1$. By induction, $A$ can be seen to be of the desired form.

Theorem 6.65: Let $L / \mathbb{Q}$ be quadratic, $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ arbitrary. Assume there is some $\theta \in L$ such that $N(\theta)=k$, we can find some $\tau \in U_{S}$ with $N(\tau)=k$ for $S$ containing supp $k \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ and large enough to allow $\langle S\rangle=\mathrm{Cl}_{L}$

Proof. Let $\theta$ the solution, $N(\theta)=k$. Since $k$ is integral, we can find an ideal $\Theta \leq$ $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $N(\Theta)=|k|$, $\operatorname{supp} \Theta \subseteq \operatorname{supp} k \mathbb{Z}_{L}$. Now, by construction, $N\left(\theta \Theta^{-1}\right)=1$, thus by the lemma

$$
\theta \Theta^{-1}=\prod Q^{1-\sigma}
$$

Since $S$ generates the class group, we can find $\alpha_{Q} \in L$ and $B_{Q} \in\langle S\rangle$ such that $Q=\alpha_{Q} B_{Q}$. Now

$$
\theta \Theta^{-1}=\prod Q^{1-\sigma}=\prod \alpha_{Q}^{1-\sigma} \prod B_{Q}^{1-\sigma}
$$

thus

$$
\theta \prod \alpha_{Q}^{1-\sigma}=\Theta \prod B_{Q}^{1-\sigma}
$$

Now $N\left(\Pi \alpha_{Q}^{1-\sigma}\right)=1$ and clearly $\operatorname{supp} \theta \Pi \alpha_{Q}^{1-\sigma}=\operatorname{supp} \Theta \Pi B_{Q}^{1-\sigma} \subseteq S$, so we have a solution in $U_{S}$.

Note: it is really neccessary for $S$ to be larger than supp $k$ : take for example $L:=$ $\mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{34}]$. This field has class number 2 and fundamental unit $\varepsilon=35+6 \sqrt{34}$ or norm +1 . On the other hand, we have $3 \mathbb{Z}_{L}=P_{1} P_{2}$, hence $P_{1} P_{2}^{-1}$ is a principal ideal of norm 1. As it turns out the generator $\alpha=1 / 3(-5-\sqrt{34})$ has in fact norm -1 .

In order to solve norm equations in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ rather than $L$ we have a couple of options:
(1) Find all integral ideals of the correct norm and then do PID testing
(2) Use the $S$-unit approach to parametrise all field elements with the correct norm and intersect with $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$
(3) Use a direct, geometric approach (nice algorithm, but slow)

Norm equations in arbitrary orders $\mathcal{O}$ can then either be reduced to norm equations in $\mathbb{Z}_{L}$ by observing that $\mathbb{Z}_{L} / \mathcal{O}^{*}$ is finite - or one can use the geometric approach. Norm equations are important as a building block for more general Diophantine equations:

- Thue equations: Let $F \in \mathbb{Z}[x, y]$ be homogenous and irreducible. Then $F[x, y]=$ $k$ is a Thue-equation. Such an equation has only finitely many solutions and each of them solves $N(x+y \theta)=k$ for $\theta$ a root of $F[1, y]$ in the corresponding number field. So Thue equations need norm equations as the first step
- $S$-unit equations: Solve $a \varepsilon_{1}+b \varepsilon_{2}=c$ for $S$-units $\varepsilon_{i}$ and arbitrary $a, b, c$. Again, this has only finitely many solutions, and is reduced to Thue equations.
- Indexform equations: Try to find (all) $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{L}$ such that $\left(\mathbb{Z}_{L}: \mathbb{Z}[\alpha]\right)=k$. This is reduced to $S$-unit equations
- Searching for points on $y^{2}=x^{3}+k$, so called Mordell-curve is reduced, among other things, to indexform equations.


## 7. The Number Field Sieve

We want to factorise $N$ a huge number (say 120 or more decimal digits). We used the primality provers to see that $N$ is neither a power nor a prime. We also established easily, that $N$ is not divisible by any prime $<10^{10}$. What's next?
Recall that most modern factorisation methods try to find $X, Y \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $X^{2} \equiv Y^{2} \bmod N$ and then hopefully split $N$ via $\operatorname{gcd}(X \pm Y, N)$. The number field sieve is trying to find such numbers by means of number fields.
Let $f \in \mathbb{Z}[t]$ be irreducible such that we have for some $r \in \mathbb{Z}$

$$
f(r) \equiv 0 \bmod N
$$

i. e. $f$ needs to have a root modulo $N$. (Finding such polynomials is not easy, one way is to write $N=\sum n_{i} r^{i}$ in base $r$ and turn this into a polynomial. Note however that $r$ and $n_{i}$ won't be small and $f$ won't be monic). So far we have $R:=\mathbb{Z}[\zeta]=\mathbb{Z}[t] / f$ and $\varphi: R \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}: \theta \mapsto r$. Strictly, $R$ is not that well defined (as $f$ is not monic), so maybe think of the number field defined by $f$ and a partial homomorphism. (Alternatively, we can use $\theta$ and the minimal polynomial to define an order: $\mathbb{Z}+\sum_{j=2}^{n} \mathbb{Z}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{j} f_{n-i-1} \theta^{i}\right)$ is an order. We will just assume that (unknown) the index to maximal order is coprime to $N$. If we ever find s.th. not coprime, we have a factorisation)
Assume that we have some $g \in \mathbb{Z}[\theta]$ that is a square. Then $\varphi(g)$ is a square in $\mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z}$ as well and we might be able to use the above idea. Slightly better:
We will be looking at elements $\alpha_{i}=a_{i}+b_{i} \theta$ such that $\Pi \alpha_{i}$ is a square in $\mathbb{Q}[\theta]$ and such that $\prod a_{i}+r b_{i}$ is a square in $\mathbb{Z}$.
In NFS, we fix an algebraic factor base $B$ of prime ideals in $\mathbb{Q}[\theta]$, more specific, we only take unramified (easy) degree 1 prime ideals, also know as roots of $f$ modulo $p$. We also fix a rational factor base $C$ of prime numbers. To find suitable pairs $a, b$ such that $a+b \theta$ is $B$-smooth, we apply sieving. Starting with the observation that if $a+b \theta \in Q$ for some $Q \in B$, we also have $(a+k p)+(b+l p) \theta \in Q$ for $p=\min \mathbb{N} \cap Q$. This is used systematically to mark pairs $(a, b)$ such that the resulting algebraic number has many prime divisors in $B$ (and similarly in $C$ ). To make the method more successful we keep track of the norm of the elements $|N(a+b \theta)|=\left|b^{n} N(a / b+\theta)\right|=\left|b^{n} f(a / b)\right|$ : We know that $N(c+\theta)$ is (up to sign) the constant term of the monic characteristic polynomial. However for $g(t):=f(t-c)$ we have $g(\theta+c)=f(\theta+c-c)=f(\theta)=0$, so $g$ is the characteristic polynomial of $\theta+c$. For the constant term $g(0)$ we have $g(0)=f(-c)$ as claimed. The sieving algorithm keeps track of the norms of the elements and the norms of the prime ideals $Q$ to find elements that hopefully are $B$-smooth.
The next problem is that, even if we find $\beta$ such that $\beta \in U_{B}$ and $v_{Q}(\beta) \equiv 0 \bmod 2$ for all $Q$, we don't neccessarily have that $\beta$ is a square (in $\mathbb{Q}$ the sign might be wrong, here we have problems with general units). To aid here, we check that $\beta$ is a square modulo a few unrelated prime ideals $P$.
As a result, we have $\prod a_{i}+b_{i} \alpha=\beta^{2}$ (probably) for some $\beta \in \mathbb{Q}[\theta]$ and $\prod a_{i}+r b_{i}=\gamma^{2}$ for some $\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}$. Next, we need to compute the roots. Here we need the algorithms of the previous section. Typically, we have $>10^{6}$ pairs and a huge product that cannot be evaluated directly.

